

# 中职英语学案（下册）

主编 欧永灵 兰利元 刘 卓

電子工業出版社

Publishing House of Electronics Industry

北京·BEIJING

## 内 容 简 介

《中职英语学案》是配套人民教育出版社出版的中职英语教材《英语》而编写的练习册，分为上下册。分别针对词汇、语法、阅读、写作功能设计了四部分练习。本册包含两个模块：《提升篇》和《综合篇》。《提升篇》在基础和强化练习的原有知识基础上，对知识进行综合提升训练；《综合篇》针对最后阶段的复习，提供全面的综合性较强的练习，为中职生对口升学考试提供针对性的辅导。教师可根据各模块的学时规定，选取相应的模块，或将两个以上模块组合进行教学。多个模块灵活组合的结构可以更好地适应不同地区、学校、专业和学生的需要，帮助教师真正践行因材施教，进行有效的差异教学。

未经许可，不得以任何方式复制或抄袭本书之部分或全部内容。  
版权所有，侵权必究。

### 图书在版编目（CIP）数据

中职英语学案. 下册 / 欧永灵, 兰利元, 刘卓主编. —北京: 电子工业出版社, 2017.9  
ISBN 978-7-121-32694-3

I. ①中… II. ①欧… ②兰… ③刘… III. ①英语课—中等专业学校—习题集 IV. ①G634.415

中国版本图书馆 CIP 数据核字 (2017) 第 225601 号

策划编辑: 祁玉芹

责任编辑: 张瑞喜

印 刷: 中国电影出版社印刷厂

装 订: 中国电影出版社印刷厂

出版发行: 电子工业出版社

北京市海淀区万寿路 173 信箱 邮编 100036

开 本: 787×1092 1/16 印张: 12 字数: 292 千字

版 次: 2017 年 9 月第 1 版

印 次: 2017 年 9 月第 1 次印刷

定 价: 26.50 元

凡所购买电子工业出版社图书有缺损问题, 请向购买书店调换。若书店售缺, 请与本社发行部联系, 联系及邮购电话: (010) 88254888, 88258888。

质量投诉请发邮件至 [zltz@phei.com.cn](mailto:zltz@phei.com.cn), 盗版侵权举报请发邮件至 [dbqq@phei.com.cn](mailto:dbqq@phei.com.cn)。

本书咨询联系方式: [qiyuqin@phei.com.cn](mailto:qiyuqin@phei.com.cn)。

## 编委会名单

主 编 欧永灵 兰利元 刘 卓

副主编 兰俊松 韦艳琼 韦春甜

罗周萍 邓 敏 蓝美新

参 编 胡宛艳 杨燕虹

# 前 言



普通高校招收中等职业学校毕业生考试已经进行十余年，但是参加这类考试的考生所需的复习资料少之又少，无从选择。为了帮助参加普通高校对口招收中等职业学校毕业生考试的广大考生全面、系统、快速、高效地复习备考，我们邀请了国家级重点职业学校的具有丰富对口高考复习教学工作的一线教师，在学习、研究考纲和集体认真研讨的基础上，严格按照《普通高校对口招收中等职业学校毕业生考试纲要》要求，精心编写了对口升学考试复习用书《中职英语学案》上下册，供参加普通高校招收中等职业学校毕业生考试的考生复习备考之用。

本书具有如下特点：

**编委阵容强大：**作者均系资深国家级中职改革发展示范校建设学校及国家级重点中等职业学校的一线骨干教师，具有丰富的对口高考复习教学经验。

**编写体系成熟：**严格按照最新对口高考大纲进行编写，分析了近几年的对口高考试卷，并且根据新的考试动向进行对口高考试题预测。

**编写内容齐全：**内容涵盖了最新普通高校招收中等职业学校毕业生考试大纲中要求掌握的全部内容，并在此基础上，对语法、词汇、句型进行要精要的总结并辅以适量具有知识代表性的练习题，学生通过阅读与练习，全面快速提高应试的水平。

由于我们水平有限，而且编写时间短促，加之编者水平有限，在编写过程中，难免有不妥之处，恳请同行专家不吝指正。

# 目 录



提升篇 .....	1
Unit 1 Can you play the guitar? .....	2
Unit 2 What time do you go to school? .....	15
Unit 3 How do you get to school? .....	27
Unit 4 Don't eat in class! .....	39
Unit 5 Why do you like pandas? .....	50
Unit 6 I'm watching TV .....	58
Unit 7 It's raining .....	66
Unit 8 Is there a post office near here? .....	74
Unit 9 What does he look like? .....	83
Unit 10 I'd like some noodles. ....	92

Unit 11	How was your school trip? .....	101
Unit 12	What did you do last weekend? .....	113
综合篇	.....	125
Unit 1	Where did you go on vacation? .....	126
Unit 2	How often do you exercise? .....	144
Unit 3	I'm more outgoing than my sister. ....	158
Unit 4	What's the best movie theater? .....	173

# 提 升 篇

## Unit 1 Can you play the guitar?

### \*知识清单

语言聚焦	单词	sing v. 唱歌    swim v. & n. 游泳    dance v. 跳舞 n. 舞蹈    draw v. 画; 吸引 join v. 加入    club n. 俱乐部, 社团    speak v. 说 (某种语言); 说话 drum n. 鼓 v. 击鼓    piano n. 钢琴    guitar n. 吉他    violin n. 小提琴 home n. (……之) 家; adj. 国内的, 家庭的; adv. 在家, 回家    interesting adj. 有趣的 weekend n. 周末    also adv. 也; 同样
	短语	speak English 讲英语    play chess 下棋    play the guitar 弹吉他    play the drum 敲鼓 play the piano 弹钢琴    play the violin 拉小提琴    be good at 擅长于…… tell stories 讲故事    be good with 对……有办法    make friends 结交朋友 help sb. with sth. 在某方面帮助某人    on the weekend (在) 周末
	句型	(1) — Can you draw? 你会画画吗? — Yes, I can./ No, I can't. 是的, 我会。/不, 我不会。 (2) — What club do you want to join? 你想参加什么俱乐部? — I want to join a sports club. 我想参加运动俱乐部。 (3) I can play ping-pong and chess. 我会打乒乓球和下棋。 (4) I like to talk and play games with people. 我喜欢和别人一起聊天, 玩游戏。 (5) We need you to help with sports for English-speaking students. 我们需要你帮着说英语的学生做运动。

### \*语法精讲

#### 情态动词的用法

情态动词有 can (could), may (might), must, have to, shall (should), will (would), dare (dared), need (needed), ought to 等, 表示说话人对所说动作的观点, 如需要、可能、意愿、怀疑等。情态动词形式上一般无人称和数的变化; 不能单独使用, 必须与其后的动词原形构成谓语。

#### (一) 基础动词

##### 1. can, could

1) 表示能力 (体力、知识、技能)。

Can you carry this heavy box?

Mike can speak four languages.



Can you type?

此时可用 be able to 代替。Can 只有一般现在时和一般过去式；而 be able to 则有更多的时态。

I'll not be able to come this afternoon.

当表示“经过努力才得以做成功某事”时应用 be able to，不能用 Can。如：

He was able to go to the party yesterday evening in spite of the heavy rain.

2) 表示请求和允许。

—Can I leave now?

—Yes, you can. / No, you can't.

此时可与 may 互换。在疑问句中还可使用 could/might 代替，不是过去式，只是语气更委婉，不能用于肯定句和答语中。

—Could I come to meet you tonight?

—Yes, you can. (No, I'm afraid not.)

3) 表示客观可能性（客观原因形成的能力）。

They've changed the timetable, so we can go by bus instead.

This hall can hold 500 people at least.

4) 表示推测（惊讶、怀疑、不相信的态度），用于疑问句、否定句和感叹句中。

Can this be true?

This can't be done by him.

How can this be true?

2. may, might

1) 表示请求和允许。might 比 may 语气更委婉，而不是过去式。否定回答时可用 can't 或 mustn't，表示“不可以，禁止”。

—Might/ May I smoke here?

—No, you mustn't.

—May/Might I take this book out of the room?

—Yes, you can. (No, you can't / mustn't.)

用 May I...? 征求对方许可时比较正式和客气，而用 Can I...? 在口语中更常见。

2) 用于祈使句，表示祝愿。

May you succeed!

3) 表示推测、可能性（不用于疑问句）。

might 不是过去式，它所表示的可能性比 may 小。

My father may /might be very busy now.

Mary may /might not know the truth.

3. must, have to

1) 表示必须、必要。

You must come in time.

在回答引出的问句时，如果是否定的，不能用 mustn't（禁止，不准），而用 needn't, don't have to（不必）。

—Must we finish our exercise today?

—Yes, you must.

—No, you don't have to / you needn't.

2) must 是说话人的主观看法, 而 have to 则强调客观需要。Must 只有一般现在时, have to 有更多的时态形式。

The play isn't interesting, I really must go now.

I had to work when I was your age.

3) 表示推测、可能性 (只用于肯定的陈述句)。

You're Tom's good friend, so you must know what he likes best.

Your mother must be waiting for you now.

## (二) 拓展动词

### 1. dare, need

1) dare 作情态动词用时, 常用于疑问句、否定句和条件从句中, 过去式形式为 dared。

How dare you say he is crazy?

He daren't speak English before such a crowd, dare he?

If we dared not go there that day, we couldn't get the beautiful flowers.

2) need 作情态动词用时, 常用于疑问句、否定句。在肯定句中一般用 must, have to, ought to, should 代替。

You needn't come here so early.

—Need I finish my homework today?

—Yes, you must. / No, you needn't.

3) dare 和 need 作实义动词用时, 有人称、时态和数的变化。在肯定句中, dare 后面常接带 to 的不定式。在疑问句和否定句中, dare 后面可接带 to 或不带 to 的不定式。而 need 后面只能接带 to 的不定式。

I dare to swim alone in the river.

He doesn't dare (to) answer.

He needs to finish his homework today.

### 2. shall, should

1) shall 用于第一人称, 征求对方的意见。

What shall we do this evening?

2) shall 用于第二、三人称, 表示说话人给对方的命令、警告、允诺或威胁。

You shall fail if you don't work hard. (警告)

You shall have the book when I finish it. (允诺)

John shall be punished. (威胁)

### 3. will, would

1) 表示请求、建议等, would 更委婉。

Will / Would you give me the book, please?

2) 表示意志、愿望和决心。

I will never do that again.

They asked him if he would go swimming.

3) would 表示过去反复发生的动作或某种倾向。would 表示过去习惯时比 used to 正式，且没有“现已无此习惯”的含义。

During the vacation, he would visit me every other day.

The wound would not heal.

4) 表示估计和猜想。

It would be about ten o'clock when she left home.

4. should, ought to

1) should, ought to 表示“应该”，ought to 表示义务或责任，比 should 语气重。

I should help her because she is in trouble.

You ought to take care of the baby.

2) 表示劝告、建议和命令。should, ought to 可通用，但在疑问句中常用 should。

You should / ought to go to class right away.

Should I open the window?

3) 表示推测

should, ought to (客观推测), must (主观推测)。

He must be home by now. (断定他已到家)

He ought to/should be home by now. (不太肯定)

This is where the oil must be. (直爽)

This is where the oil ought to/should be. (含蓄)

### (三) 基本句式

1. 肯定式：情态动词 can (may/must 等) + 动词原形。例如：

I can speak English. 我会说英语。

2. 否定式：情态动词 can (may/must 等) + not + 动词原形。例如：

I can't play football. 我不会踢足球。

3. 疑问式：情态动词 can (may/must 等) .....?

答语：Yes, 主语 + can. 或 No, 主语 + can't. 例如：

—Can he swim? 他会游泳吗？

—Yes, he can. 是的，他会。

4. 特殊疑问式：疑问词 + 一般疑问句。例如：

What can I help you? 我能帮你什么忙吗？

### 【活用】

① Must I clean the classroom now?

No, you \_\_\_\_\_.

A. needn't

B. may not

C. mustn't

D. can't

② — Who is the boy over there? Is it Mike?

— No, it \_\_\_\_\_ be him. Mike is much taller.

A. mustn't

B. may not

C. can't

D. needn't

③ — 你会唱歌吗？—是的，我会。—不，我不会。

— \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_?

— yes, I \_\_\_\_\_./ No, I \_\_\_\_\_.

④ — 你会做什么？— 我会游泳。

— What \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_?

— I \_\_\_\_\_ swim.

### \*知识辨析

辨析 1: join v. 参加，加入

I want to join the music club. 我想加入音乐俱乐部。

知识拓展：join、join in、take part in 的用法区别：

(1) join 多指参加组织、团体、党派等。

My father joined the army in 1992. 我爸爸 1992 年参军。

(2) join (sb.) in 指参加到某些人当中去做某事，这项活动往往正在进行着（参加某项游戏或活动）；

May I join you in the game? 我可以参加你们的游戏吗？

They joined me in congratulating you. 他们和我一起向你祝贺。

(3) take part in 指参加会议或者群众性的活动等，重在说明句子的主语参加该项活动并在活动中发挥作用，多指参加群众性的活动、运动、会议等。

John takes part in many school activities. 约翰参加很多学校里的活动。

附加：

take part in 是参加某种活动

take a part in 在……中扮演某个角色

#### 【活用】

① 你可以加入到我们的讨论中。

You can \_\_\_\_\_ the discussion.

② 我想加入计算机俱乐部。

I want to \_\_\_\_\_.

辨析 2: tell v. 讲述、告诉

She can tell story/joke. 她会讲故事/ 开玩笑。

Shall we tell him the news? 我们要告诉他这个消息吗啊？

知识拓展：tell、say、speak、talk 的用法区别

(1) tell 告诉，讲述（及物动词），指某人把某一件事、一条信息传送给别人或讲述一件事。如：

① tell sb. to do sth. / tell sb. not to do sth. “告诉某人做/不做某事”

My mother tells me to go to school early. 我妈妈让我买些水果。

Tell him not to be late. 告诉他不要迟到。

② tell 作及物动词，意为“告诉，对……说”，常用作 tell sb. sth. / tell sth. to sb. “告诉某人某事”。例如：

I can't tell you the bad news. = I can't tell the bad news to you.

我不能告诉你这个坏消息。

③ 当 tell 的宾语是 a person / a game / a success 时，须用 tell about。即：tell sb. about sth. (后常跟某人)。例如：

She tells us about her aunt / about the game / about her success.

她经常对我们谈起她的姑母 / 那场比赛 / 她的成功。

④ tell 还专指讲故事，说谎。例如：

tell a story 讲故事

tell a lie 说谎

tell the time “报时”

Father always tells interesting stories to us.

爸爸总是给我们讲有趣的故事。

(2) say 说

① say 是“讲，说”的意思，强调说话内容。一般作及物动词，常用于直接引述所说的话或间接叙述所说的话。例如：

He can say his name. 他会说他的名字。

Say it in English (及物动词，后跟宾语 it)

He says, “It's great.” 他说：“好极了。”

He says that he saw the man yesterday. 他说昨天我看见这个人了。

② say to sb. “对……说”(不及物动词)。如：

He said to his students that they would have a test.

他对他的学生说他们将有一个测试。

③ It is said that... 意为“据说”。如：

It is said that he could stay under the water for a long time.

据说他能呆在水里很长时间。

(3) speak

① speak 讲话，发言(不及物动词)，

speak at the meeting 在会议上发言

The baby is learning to speak.

这个孩子正在学说话。(即：表示会说话的能力)

② speak to sb. (不及物动词) 意为“和……讲话、谈话”。

Can I speak to Mr. Zhang? 我能和张先生讲话吗?

I'll speak to him. 我要跟他谈谈。

③ speak (及物动词)，后面主要接语言。如：

speak Chinese 说汉语

He can speak English and a little Chinese.

他能讲英语和一点汉语。

(4) talk 谈话（不及物动词）

① talk about sth.（谈论某事）如：

They are talking about the movie/ film. 他们在谈论那部电影。

② talk with /to sb.（和某人交谈）。如果只有一方对另一方说话时，一般用 talk to；如果双方或多方交谈，多用 with。如：

Please talk to him right now. 请立即同他谈话。

He is talking with his friend. 他在和朋友交谈。

附加：

speak to 和 talk to 可以通用，都表示“和……谈话”。例如：

They are speaking/talking to a foreign friend. 他们正在和一位外国朋友谈话。

### 【活用】

① Can you \_\_\_\_\_ English?

A. say

B. tell

C. speak

D. talk

② She likes \_\_\_\_\_ stories.

A. saying

B. telling

C. speaking

D. tell

③ 她喜欢和别人聊天。

She likes to \_\_\_\_\_ with others.

④ 你能用英语来说吗？

Can you \_\_\_\_\_ it in English?

辨析 3: be good at... 擅长于……，

be good at... 相当于 do well in..., 后可接名词、代词或动词-ing 形式。

He is good at English. 他擅长英语。

My sister is good at telling stories. 我姐姐擅长讲故事。

知识拓展：

(1) be good with 意为“与……相处得好”。相当于 get on well with

He is very good with the children. 他与这些孩子处得很好。

= He is getting on with the children.

(2) be good to 意为“对……好”。反义词 be harmful to, do harm to

My friend was good to me when I was ill.

我生病时我的朋友对我关怀备至。

(4) be good for 意为“对……有好处”。例如：

Eating more vegetables is good for your health.

多吃蔬菜对你的健康有好处。

## 【活用】

① 早睡有益于你的健康。

Sleeping early \_\_\_\_\_ your health.

② 我爸爸对我很好。

My father \_\_\_\_\_ me.

③ 这位老师总是和她的学生相处得很好。

The teacher \_\_\_\_\_ always \_\_\_\_\_ her students.

辨析 4: play v. 打/踢(球)、玩(游戏)、弹奏(乐器)

动词 play 的用法小知识

(1) play 后跟乐器类名词时, play + the + 乐器。

play the guitar 弹吉他

play the piano 弹钢琴

(2) play 后跟球类、棋类时, play + 球类、棋类。

play football 踢足球

play chess 下棋

## 【活用】

① Can you play \_\_\_\_\_ chess?

A. a

B. an

C. the

D. /

② Kate likes playing \_\_\_\_\_ piano very much.

A. /

B. a

C. the

D. an

辨析 5: and conj. 和

I can play ping-pong and chess. 我会打乒乓球和下棋。

I like to talk and play games with people. 我喜欢与人聊天和玩游戏。

考点拓展: and、but 和 or 的用法区别

(1) and 连接两个名词, 代词或两个形容词等语法作用相同的词语或连结两个并列句, 表示顺承或并列关系, 在否定句中一般用 or 代替 and。

(2) but 译为“但是”, “可是”, “而”, “却”。连结两个并列句, 两个分句之间存在转折关系

(3) or 译为“否则”, “或者”。

用法一: “一般疑问句+ or+被选择的部分”构成选择疑问句。

Do you like apples or pears? 你喜欢苹果还是雪梨?

用法二: “祈使句+or+陈述句”, 表示“……, 否则, ……”

Hurry up, or you will be late. 快点, 否则你会迟到的。

用法三: “和”, 否定句中代替 and。

I don't like bananas or pears. 我不喜欢香蕉和雪梨。

## 【活用】

① Mike can play football, \_\_\_\_\_ he can't play it very well.

- A. and                      B. so                      C. or                      D. but
- ② I can sing \_\_\_\_\_ dance, \_\_\_\_\_ I can't swim \_\_\_\_\_ draw.  
A. but; and; or              B. and; but; or              C. but; or; and              D. or; but; and

#### 辨析 6: also 和 too 的用法区别

also 和 too 都是“也”的意思; 用法一般都是用于肯定句中

(1) also 放句子中间 (在助动词、情态动词或 be 动词之后) 或句首, 但不能放句末。

we can also do that./Also, we can do that. 我们也能做那事。

(2) too 只能放句末,

you will keep me happy, and you I will keep you happy, too!

你让我快乐, 我也会让你快乐。

#### 【活用】

- ① Mary likes singing, and I like singing, \_\_\_\_\_!  
A. also                      B. too                      C. and                      D. with
- ② She has a white skirt. I \_\_\_\_\_ have a white skirt.  
A. too                      B. also                      C. either                      D. and

### ☆达标检测

#### 一、用所给词的适当形式填空

- Let's \_\_\_\_\_ (go) to the movie .
- I want \_\_\_\_\_ (join) the art club .
- Mary \_\_\_\_\_ (not have) a piano.
- Here \_\_\_\_\_ (be) my name card for you .
- Frank \_\_\_\_\_ (like) bananas very .
- This story is very \_\_\_\_\_ (interest) .
- Mr. Green can play the piano very \_\_\_\_\_ (good).
- I can \_\_\_\_\_ (not speak) Japanese.
- Beijing opera is \_\_\_\_\_ (real) interesting .
- They like \_\_\_\_\_ (China) kongfu very much .

#### 二、完成句子

- 晚饭过后帮我学英语吧, 妈妈。  
Please \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_ my English, mum.
- Mary 喜欢唱歌, 我想和她交朋友。  
Mary likes singing and I want to \_\_\_\_\_ her.
- 她擅长于和小孩相处吗?  
\_\_\_\_\_ she \_\_\_\_\_ kids?
- 我周末没有空。



I'm not free \_\_\_\_\_.

5. 在课堂上, Lily 总跟 Kate 讲话。

Lily always \_\_\_\_\_ Kate in class.

### 三、单项选择

1. —Let's \_\_\_\_\_ the computer club.  
—Good idea!  
A. go                      B. join                      C. join in                      D. take part
2. We are playing chess, would you like to \_\_\_\_\_ us?  
A. take part in              B. join in                      C. join                      D. take part
3. Lily is from the USA, so she \_\_\_\_\_ English very well.  
A. says                      B. speaks                      C. tells                      D. talks
4. The mother often \_\_\_\_\_ her son a story before she goes to bed.  
A. tells                      B. talks                      C. says                      D. speaks
5. Tom wants \_\_\_\_\_ to you.  
A. to tell                      B. tells                      C. to talk                      D. talks
6. Can he \_\_\_\_\_ it in English?  
A. speak                      B. speaks                      C. say                      D. talk
7. —How about going shopping!  
—\_\_\_\_\_!  
A. Sounds good              B. Thanks                      C. You're welcome              D. See you
8. —Can you dance, Nancy?  
—\_\_\_\_\_, but I can sing.  
A. Yes, I can                      B. No, I can't                      C. Yes, I am                      D. No, I don't
9. —May I stop my car here?  
—No, you \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. can't                      B. mustn't                      C. needn't                      D. don't have to
10. —Must we clean the house now?  
—No, you \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. needn't                      B. may not                      C. mustn't                      D. can't
11. My brother \_\_\_\_\_ the violin and he play it \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. can plays; good                      B. can't play; good  
C. can play; well                      D. doesn't play; well
12. My sister can \_\_\_\_\_. He wants \_\_\_\_\_ this afternoon.  
A. swim; swim                      B. swim; to swim  
C. swimming; swim                      D. to swim; swimming
13. —Hi, can I help you?  
—\_\_\_\_\_.  
A. I can help you              B. No, You can't              C. Yes, You can              D. Yes, please

14. You \_\_\_\_\_ play with fire. It's dangerous.  
A. may not                      B. can not                      C. mustn't                      D. wouldn't
15. Xiao Ming \_\_\_\_\_ at home now. He is at school, I'm sure.  
A. may not be                      B. can't be                      C. can be                      D. may be
16. Her sister can play \_\_\_\_\_ piano, but she can't play \_\_\_\_\_ basketball.  
A. the; the                      B. ./; the                      C. the; /                      D. ./; /
17. My brother can play the guitar, \_\_\_\_\_ he can't play it very well.  
A. and                      B. so                      C. or                      D. but
18. I can use a computer \_\_\_\_\_ play basketball, \_\_\_\_\_ I can't sing \_\_\_\_\_ dance.  
A. but; and; or                      B. and; but; or                      C. but; or; and                      D. or; but; and
19. Work hard, \_\_\_\_\_ you'll pass the exam .  
A. or                      B. but                      C. because                      D. and
20. —Are you good \_\_\_\_\_ your students?  
—Yes, I am.  
A. at                      B. with                      C. for                      D. of
21. Thanks for \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_ my English.  
A. help; with                      B. helping; and                      C. help; for                      D. helping; with
22. My favorite subject is English, and I \_\_\_\_\_ like PE.  
A. also                      B. too                      C. only                      D. well
23. —I'm in class 3, what class are you in?  
—We are in class 3, \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. also                      B. too                      C. and                      D. but
24. Please call me \_\_\_\_\_ 8989766.  
A. in                      B. at                      C. about                      D. with
25. When I grow up, I want \_\_\_\_\_ a musician.  
A. be                      B. to be                      C. am                      D. are
26. Does Simon \_\_\_\_\_ after school?  
A. walk home                      B. walk to home  
C. go to home on foot                      D. go home on feet
27. Tom can draw \_\_\_\_\_. His drawings are very \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. good, well                      B. well, good                      C. good, good                      D. well, well
28. Mary is an outgoing girl, and she likes telling \_\_\_\_\_ story very much.  
A. interest                      B. interested                      C. interesting                      D. an interest
29. \_\_\_\_\_ talking and \_\_\_\_\_ quiet.  
A. Stop; keep                      B. To stop; to keep  
C. To stop; keep                      D. Stop; to keep
30. I like \_\_\_\_\_ basketball very much.  
A. play                      B. played                      C. playing                      D. plays

## 四、完形填空

Bob and Sue are in the same school, 1 they are in different 2. They go to school on weekdays. 3 school, Bob and Sue often play games with 4 friends.

Classes begin 5 eight in the morning. Now Bob and Sue are in their classrooms. They are listening to their 6. Bob's studying English. His teacher is talking 7 English. Sue's 8 a Chinese class. Her teacher is talking 9 writing. They study hard. They love their teachers and they like their 10.

- |               |              |            |               |
|---------------|--------------|------------|---------------|
| 1. A. but     | B. and       | C. or      | D. when       |
| 2. A. classes | B. class     | C. lesson  | D. lessons    |
| 3. A. In      | B. When      | C. To      | D. At         |
| 4. A. his     | B. her       | C. other   | D. their      |
| 5. A. about   | B. in        | C. at      | D. on         |
| 6. A. friends | B. father    | C. teacher | D. teachers   |
| 7. A. with    | B. at        | C. in      | D. for        |
| 8. A. having  | B. listening | C. getting | D. sitting in |
| 9. A. at      | B. about     | C. for     | D. like       |
| 10. A. home   | B. family    | C. school  | D. clothes    |

## 五、阅读理解

(A)

阅读短文，选择正确答案。

Mary is an American schoolgirl. She is now in Beijing with her parents. She doesn't know Chinese, but she is trying (努力) to study and speak it. She often tries to speak Chinese to her Chinese friends. Sometimes they don't understand (理解) her, because she can't speak Chinese well.

It's Saturday morning. Mary goes out. She is on her way to the park. She is going there to see a flower show (展览). But she doesn't know how to get there. She asks a Chinese boy. The boy can't understand her. Then she takes out a pen and some paper. She draws flowers on it, gives the picture to the boy and says something about it. The boy smiles and then shows (指给) Mary the way to the park.

- Where does Mary live now? She lives in \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. America      B. England      C. China      D. Canada
- She can speak \_\_\_\_\_ Chinese.  
A. much      B. many      C. little      D. a few
- She likes \_\_\_\_\_ Chinese with her \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. speak, parents      B. speaking, friends  
C. speaks, girl-friends      D. speaking, teachers
- Where is she going?

A. To a new school.

B. To see her friends.

C. To a farm.

D. To see some flowers.

5. How does she ask the way to the flower show?

A. She asks the way in Chinese.

B. She asks the way with a sign (标志).

C. She draws a picture to ask the way.

D. She doesn't ask any people.

### (B)

阅读短文，然后根据内容判断正（√）误（×）。

Mr. and Mrs. Scott want to buy some new chairs for their new house. They come into a shop and see some very good chairs on the floor. They like the color and want to know how much they are. They see a price tag (标签) on one chair. It says (上面写着) "¥100". They like the chair but they are too dear (贵) for them. The Scotts don't think they can buy them now. They leave this shop and go to other shops. Mr. Scott thinks they can find some cheap chairs.

6. Mr. and Mrs. Scott have a new house.

7. They want to buy tables and chairs for their house.

8. They think the chairs in this shop are cheap.

9. They leave the shop and go home.

10. They want to buy good and cheap chairs.

## 六、书面表达

### 1. 句子翻译

(1) 我不会打篮球。

(2) 我喜欢唱歌，我想加入音乐俱乐部。

(3) —你会下棋吗？

—不，我不会。

(4) 跳舞是很有趣的。

(5) 请给我打电话，号码是 4088989。

### 2. 短文写作

#### (1)

写作话题：本单元以能力为话题，谈论自己或他人的能力。如会干或不会干……。

写作题目：ABC 外贸公司针对职业院校毕业生，在网站上刊登了一则招聘广告，要招聘一名秘书。

要求：(1) 会英语；(2) 熟练操作计算机。

范文：

Secretary Wanted

Can you speak English? Can you read English? Can you write English? Can you use computer? Can you type fast? Come and join us! Please call Wang Mei at 6367786. Our e-mail address is everyday@163.com.

(2)

假设你是李明，请根据上文及下表内容及提示写一封 60 字左右的求职信。

姓名	李明
学校	Guang Ming 职业学校
技能特长	具有较强的英语说、读、写的能力，能熟练操作电脑
工作经历	做过打字员，打字速度很快

提示：做……工作：work as，秘书：secretary，招聘：

\*成篇

Dear Sir/Madam,

I have just learnt from the newspaper that your company is looking for a secretary. I am writing to you to introduce myself and apply for the job.

My name is Li Ming, and I am studying in Guang Ming Vocational School. I can speak, read and write English quite well. I can use the computer as well. I can type really fast and I once worked as a typist.

Look forward to hearing from you.

Yours,

Liming

Unit 2 What time do you go to school?

\*知识清单

语言 聚焦	单 词	dress v. 穿衣服； n. 连衣裙	brush v. 刷；刷净； n. 刷子	tooth (teeth 复数) n. 牙齿
		shower v. 淋浴； n. 淋浴器（间）	usually adj. 通常地；一般地	schedule n. 时间表； vt. 安排，计划
		never adv. 从不；绝不	sometimes adv. 有时	always adv. 总是
		o'clock adv. （表示整点）……点钟	funny adj. 奇怪的；滑稽好笑的	half n. & pron. 一半、半数
		past prep. 晚于；过（时间）； adj. 过去的		quarter n. 一刻钟；四分之一
		health n. 健康	healthy adj. 健康的	taste v. 品尝； n. 味道；滋味
		quick adj. 快速的	quickly adv. 快速地	clean v. 打扫

（续表）

	短 语	get up 起床      go to school 去上学      get dressed 穿上衣服      brush teeth 刷牙 have (eat) breakfast 吃早餐      take a shower 淋浴, 洗澡      go to work 去上班 what time 几点, 什么时候      be late for 迟到      on weekends 在周末 do (one's) homework 做作业      clean my room 打扫我的房间      go home 回家 go to bed 上床睡觉      play sports 做运动      take a walk 散步 either... or... 要么……要么; 或者……或者…… be good for 对……有益/好处      half past four 四点半
	句 型	(1) — What time do you usually get up? 你是几点钟起床的? — I usually get up at 8 o'clock. 我 8 点钟起床。 (2) — When do you go to work? 你是什么时候上班的? — I go to work at 9 o'clock. 我 9 点上班。 (3) In the evening, I either watch TV or play computer games. 在晚上, 我要么看电视要么玩电脑游戏。 (4) She knows it's not good for her, but it tastes good! 她知道它对她不好, 但它尝起来很好。

## \*语法精讲

### What time 和 When 引导的特殊疑问句以及频度副词

#### （一）what time 与 when 的用法

what time 常用来问钟点, 而 when 除了问钟点外, 还可用来问日期, 月份, 年份等。有时两者可以换用, 有的场合不可以。

(1) 问钟点时, 可以换用。

When do you go to school?

What time do you go to school?

(2) 问日期, 月份, 年份等, 只能用 when

When were you born? I was born on July 2, 1972.

When is your birthday?

(3) 当问某事在某天的什么具体时间进行, 只能用 what time

What time did you call this afternoon?

I called at 4:00 this afternoon.

附加:

when 的特殊用法

(1) 副词 adv.

① (用作疑问副词) 什么时候, 何时

I'd like to know when they'll let him out.

When did you last see Margaret?

② (用作关系副词, 引导关系从句) 当……时

There were times when I didn't know what to do.

(2) 连词 conj.

① 当……时

John got engaged to her when travelling last winter.

Don't get excited when you talk.

② 既然, 考虑到

How can he get the promotion when his boss dislikes him?

③ 虽然, 然而

I had only fifteen dollars on me when the book I wanted cost twenty.

④ 在那时, 然后

(3) 代词 pron.

什么时候, 那时

Since when has she taught here?

### 【活用】

① — \_\_\_\_\_ the time?

— It's 8 now .

A. When

B. What time

C. What's

D. How

② — \_\_\_\_\_ do you have supper?

— At about 6:30.

A. Where

B. How

C. What time

D. What

③ — \_\_\_\_\_ is your trip to Beijing?

— In may.

A. Where

B. When

C. What time

D. How

### (二) 频度副词

常用的频度副词有: always, usually, often, sometimes, seldom 和 never 等, 它们都是用来做时间状语, 但它们所表示的动作频率不同。

通常说来, always 表示 100%, usually 表示 80%, often 表示 60%, sometimes 表示 40%, seldom 表示 20%, never 表示 0%。

(1) always 是频度最高的词, 表示动作的重复, 状态的继续, 中间没有间断。意为“总是、一直”, 其反义词是 never。当它与现在进行时连用时, 常译作“老是”, “总是”, 带有赞扬、厌烦、不满等感情色彩。

The sun always rises in the east and sets in the west. 太阳一直东升西落。

She is always coming late. 她老是迟到。

(2) usually 意为“通常”, 表示通常如此, 很少例外, 频度仅次于 always, 反义词为 unusually。

What do you usually do on Sundays? 你星期天通常干什么?

I usually got up at six in the morning last term. 上学期我通常在早上六点钟起床。

(3) often 意为“经常、常常”，不如 usually 那么频繁，表示动作重复，中间有间断，反义词为 seldom。

They often go for a walk after supper. 晚饭后他们经常去散步。

My parents often take me to the zoo on weekends. 我父母常常在周末带我去动物园。

(4) sometimes 意为“有时、不时”，表示动作偶尔发生，中间常有间断，频率比 often 低。

Sometimes they play football on Saturday afternoon. =They sometimes play football on Saturday afternoon. =They play football on Saturday afternoon sometimes. 他们有时在星期六下午踢足球。

(5) seldom 意为“很少；不常”，频度较低。

We seldom go to school bus. We usually go there by bike. 我们很少乘车去上学，我们通常是骑车去。

He seldom has lunch at home. 他很少在家吃午饭。

注：hardly (“几乎不”，有时可与 seldom 互换使用)

(6) never 意为“从来不、未曾”，频度为零。

We can say Mr. John Brown or Mr. Brown, but we can never say Mr. John. 我们可以说 Mr. John Brown 或 Mr. Brown，但从来不能说 Mr. John。

The twins have never been to the Great Wall. 这对双胞胎从没有去过长城。

注意：

sometimes 的位置较灵活，可以放在句中，也可以放在句首或句末。其他五个词都位于行为动词之前，be 动词、助动词或情态动词之后。

### 【活用】

① 我总是早睡早起。

I \_\_\_\_\_ go to bed early and get up early.

② 我通常 7:30 上班。

I \_\_\_\_\_ go to work at 7:30.

③ Anna 有时骑自行车上学。

Anna \_\_\_\_\_ goes to school by bike.

④ 他放学后从不运动。

He \_\_\_\_\_ does sports after school.

### \*知识辨析

辨析 1: exercise v.& n. 锻炼；练习

(1) 用作动词，意为“锻炼”

I exercise every day. 我每天都锻炼。

(2) 用作不可数名词，意为“锻炼，运动”

I do a lot of exercise every day. 我每天都做大量运动。

(3) 用作可数名词，意为“练习”



My teacher tells me to do more exercises. 老师告诉我多做练习。

### 【活用】

用 exercise 的正确形式填空

- ① I usually \_\_\_\_\_ at about 6:30.
- ② He does a lot of \_\_\_\_\_ every day to keep healthy.
- ③ Our teacher always asks us to do more \_\_\_\_\_ to get good mark.

辨析 2: quarter *n.* 一刻钟; 四分之一

one quarter 四分之一          three quarters 四分之三

a quarter past…… “…… 点十五分”

### 知识拓展:

英语时间通常用以下两种方法表达:

#### (1) 直接表达法

A. 用基数词 + o'clock 来表示整点, 注意 o'clock 须用单数, 可以省略。如:

two o'clock 两点钟          four (o'clock) 四点钟

B. 用基数词按钟点 + 分钟的顺序直接写出时间。如:

ten-o-five 十点过五分, six fifty 六点五十分

#### (2) 间接表达法

A. 如果分钟数少于 30 分钟, 可用分钟 + past + 钟点表示, 其中 past 是介词, 意思是“过”。如:

ten past four 四点十分      five past one 一点五分

B. 如果分钟数多于 30 分钟, 可用 (60 分钟-原分钟数) + to + (原钟点数+1) 表示, 其中 to 是介词, 意思是“差”。如:

8:40 可表示为 twenty to nine 差二十分钟九点。

注: A. 当分钟数是 15 分钟时, 可用名词 quarter (一刻钟) 表示。如:

7:15 可表示为 a quarter past seven

12:15 可表示为 a quarter past twelve

B. 当分钟数是 30 分钟时, 可用名词 half (一半) 表示。如:

9:30 可表示为 half past nine

3:30 可表示为 half past three

### 【活用】

用英语表达方式写出下面的时间点:

- ① 5:15 \_\_\_\_\_
- ② 4:30 \_\_\_\_\_
- ③ 2:05 \_\_\_\_\_
- ④ 6:55 \_\_\_\_\_
- ⑤ 8:45 \_\_\_\_\_
- ⑥ 7:20 \_\_\_\_\_

⑦ 11:00 \_\_\_\_\_

### 辨析 3：时间介词 at、on、in 的用法

(1) 用 in 的场合

① 表示“在某年/某年代/在某世纪/月/季节”这个含义时，须用介词 in。

例如：

in 1980 在 1980 年      in 1980's 在 20 世纪 80 年代

in May 在五月      in summer 在夏季

② 表示“从现在起一段时间以后”时，须用介词 in。例如：

They will go to see you in a week. 他们将在一周后去看望你。

I will be back in a month. 我将在一个月后回来。

除此之外，morning / evening / afternoon 三个词也常跟介词 in 连用。例如：

in the evening 在晚上      in the afternoon 在下午

(2) 用 on 的场合

表示“日期”、“星期几”、“节日”或“在具体的某一天”或“(在具体的某一天的) 早上、中午、晚上”等，须用介词 on。例如：

on May 10<sup>th</sup> 在 5 月 10 日      on Saturday 在星期六

on Teachers' Day 在教师节      on Sunday evening 在星期天晚上

on a rainy morning 在一个雨天      on weekends (on the weekend) 在周末

on the afternoon of June 17<sup>th</sup> 在六月 17 日下午

(3) 用 at 的场合

① 表示“某一具体时刻(即几点几分时)”或一些固定的习惯用语中。例如：

at six o'clock 在六点      at half past nine 在九点半

② 用在特定的时候(时节、时机)时，须用介词 at。例如：

at that time 在那时候      at this time of day 在一天这个时候

③ 表示“在中午、在夜晚、在周末”时，须用介词 at。例如：

at noon 在中午      at night 在夜晚      at weekends (at the weekend) 在周末

④ 表示“在……岁”时，须用介词 at。例如：

at the age of nine 在九岁的时候

### 【活用】

① I was born \_\_\_\_\_ August.

A. at      B. in      C. on      D. for

② It was \_\_\_\_\_ 3:00 p.m. \_\_\_\_\_ the afternoon of May 8<sup>th</sup>, 1981 that I was born.

A. at; in      B. at; on      C. on; in      D. in; on

③ Sam arrived \_\_\_\_\_ London \_\_\_\_\_ a cold morning.

A. in; in      B. in; on      C. at; on      D. at; in

④ Children are always happy \_\_\_\_\_ Children's Day.

A. on      B. in      C. at      D. after

**辨析 4: either... or... “或者……或者……; 不是……就是……”**

(1) either...or...表示两者之一, 连接句子中两个并列的成分。例如:

When the girl is happy, she either sings or dances. 那个女孩高兴时, 不是唱就是跳。(此句中 either...or...连接两个动词, 因为主语是单数第三人称, 谓语动词要用其相应的形式。)

(2) either...or...连接两个主语时, 其谓语动词应与最近的一个主语在人称和数上保持一致, 这就是我们通常说的“就近原则”。例如:

Either you or I am going there tomorrow. 明天要么你去那里, 要么我去那里。

**注意:** 如果把上句变成一般疑问句, 助动词形式与主语 you 保持一致, 所以要用 are 提问, 而不是 am。例如:

Are either you or I going there tomorrow? 明天是你还是我去那里?

Either you or he has lunch at school. 其一般疑问句应为: Do either you or he have lunch at school? 是你还是他在学校吃午饭?

若要对 either...or...句型进行否定时, 只需把 either...or...换成 neither...nor...即可。例如:

Either you or she is good at drawing. 变为否定句应为: Neither you nor she is good at drawing. 你和她都不擅长绘画。

我们还可以单独使用 either, 其意为“两者中的任何一个”。例如:

There are many shops on either side of the street. 街道两边有许多商店。这个句子也可以这样表达: There are many shops on both sides of the street. 在街道两边有许多商店。

(3) either 用在否定句的句末, 表示“也”的意思。例如:

If you don't go there. I won't, either. 如果你不去那里, 我也不去。

### 【活用】

- ① The shirts didn't fit me. They're \_\_\_\_\_ too long \_\_\_\_\_ too short.  
A. not only; but also    B. neither; nor    C. both; and    D. either; or
- ② —Would you like some wine or beer?  
—\_\_\_\_\_ is OK.  
A. Both    B. All    C. Either    D. Neither
- ③ I don't like banana, and my sister doesn't, \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. also    B. too    C. neither    D. either

## ☆达标检测

### 一、用所给词的适当形式填空

1. Please \_\_\_\_\_ (clean) the room, Joe.
2. I do a lots of \_\_\_\_\_ (exercise) every week with my friends to keep healthy.
3. What \_\_\_\_\_ (do) he usually \_\_\_\_\_ (do) after school?
4. I want to buy two \_\_\_\_\_ (brush) for my mother?
5. What time \_\_\_\_\_ (do) you get \_\_\_\_\_ (dress) in morning?
6. His sister always brushes her \_\_\_\_\_ (tooth) after dinner.

7. Either you or Kate \_\_\_\_\_ (help) me with the housework.
8. There \_\_\_\_\_ (be) a news program on TV every morning.
9. Tom and Daniel \_\_\_\_\_ (be) in Class One.
10. John exercises every day, and he has a \_\_\_\_\_ (health) life .

## 二、完成句子

1. 你的妈妈七点钟去上班吗？ \_\_\_\_\_ your mother \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_ at seven?
2. 你通常几点去睡觉？ \_\_\_\_\_ do you usually \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_ ?
3. 我的妹妹在晚上做家庭作业。 My sister \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_ in the evening.
4. 你通常什么时候到家？ \_\_\_\_\_ do you usually \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_ ?
5. 我爸爸总是很忙。  
My father \_\_\_\_\_ busy.
6. Lily 经常帮她妈妈打扫房间。  
Lily \_\_\_\_\_ her mother clean the room.
7. 我 10 点一刻将会在机场接李先生。  
I'll meet Mr. Li at the airport at \_\_\_\_\_ ten.
8. 有时他放学后和朋友一起打篮球。  
\_\_\_\_\_ he \_\_\_\_\_ with his friends after school.
9. 请写信告诉我关于你们的学校生活。 Please \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ me  
\_\_\_\_\_ your school life.
10. 我 10 点半将会会有一个会议。  
I'll have a meeting at \_\_\_\_\_.

## 三、单项选择

1. —What's the time? — \_\_\_\_\_ half past one.  
A. Its                      B. It's                      C. This is                      D. They're
2. Ann goes to \_\_\_\_\_ at seven thirty in the morning.  
A. the school              B. a school              C. school                      D. schools
3. The beef \_\_\_\_\_ good. My son likes it very much.  
A. have                      B. has                      C. tastes                      D. sounds
4. The boy often gets up late, so he is often late \_\_\_\_\_ school.  
A. with                      B. at                      C. for                      D. on
5. The teacher always \_\_\_\_\_ us to come to school on time.  
A. ask                      B. asking                      C. asks                      D. asked
6. What time does Jane \_\_\_\_\_ after school?  
A. do her homework                      B. does her homework

- 23

- A. on                      B. in                      C. at                      D. after
23. The shoes didn't fit me. They're \_\_\_\_\_ big \_\_\_\_\_ small.  
A. not only; but also                      B. neither; nor  
C. both; and                      D. either; or
24. —Would you like some water or coffee?  
—\_\_\_\_\_ is OK. I really don't care.  
A. Both                      B. All                      C. Either                      D. Neither
25. I don't want to get up early, and my roommate doesn't, \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. also                      B. too                      C. neither                      D. either
26. —Is your father busy?  
—Yes, he is \_\_\_\_\_ busy with his work, and he has no time to play with me.  
A. usually                      B. always                      C. hardly                      D. never
27. —How often do you go to a concert?  
—\_\_\_\_\_. I'm not interested in that at all.  
A. Usually                      B. Hardly                      C. Almost                      D. always
28. —Does Your father often work until midnight?  
—No, he \_\_\_\_\_ does.  
A. nearly                      B. certainly                      C. seldom                      D. always
29. —Was your sister often late for work last month, Mike?  
—No, \_\_\_\_\_. She got to her company early every day.  
A. always                      B. usually                      C. sometimes                      D. never
30. Lily \_\_\_\_\_ exercises. It's not good for her health.  
A. sometimes                      B. seldom                      C. often                      D. always

#### 四、完形填空

Tom works in a store. It's near (在……附近) a   1  . The students come to   2   pens or food every day. Tom   3   at 6:00 in the morning. He   4   a bus to the store. He gets   5   the store at 6:50. His work   6   at 7:00.   7   things are on sale,   8   lots of students come to the store. Tom is very happy to meet   9   and the students   10   to see Tom very much.

- |                  |             |                |
|------------------|-------------|----------------|
| 1. A. hotel      | B. park     | C. school      |
| 2. A. sell       | B. see      | C. buy         |
| 3. A. eats lunch | B. gets up  | C. goes to bed |
| 4. A. takes      | B. brings   | C. has         |
| 5. A. in         | B. to       | C. at          |
| 6. A. starts     | B. goes     | C. comes       |
| 7. A. A lot      | B. A little | C. Many        |
| 8. A. also       | B. but      | C. and         |
| 9. A. it         | B. them     | C. him         |
| 10. A. listen    | B. love     | C. write       |

## 五、阅读理解

## (A)

阅读短文，选择正确答案。

This is Li hua's Day. He's a young worker. His job is carrying coal (运煤). He thinks that's great.

Li hua's Day

5:10 a. m. Don't work

5:20 a. m. Go home by car

5:30 a. m. Take a shower

5:40 a. m. Eat breakfast.

6:00 a. m. Go to bed.

5:00 p.m. Get up.

5:10 p.m. Buy vegetables or other things for breakfast

6:00 p.m. Have a big dinner.

6:30~7:30p.m. Watch news (新闻) on TV.

7:40 p.m. Leave home and go to work

1. When does Li hua have breakfast?

A. At 5:20 in the morning.

B. At 5:10 in the afternoon.

C. At 5:40 in the morning.

D. At 6:00 in the afternoon.

2. Where does he have his breakfast?

A. At home.

B. In the coal mine (煤矿).

C. In the restaurant (餐馆).

D. In the factory (工厂).

3. Li hua watches news \_\_\_\_\_.

A. over the radio (收音机)

B. on TV in the morning

C. every day

D. every morning

4. Li hua goes home \_\_\_\_\_.

A. at 7:40 every evening

B. at 5:20 every evening

C. at 7:30 every morning

D. at 5:20 every morning

5. —How old is Li hua? — \_\_\_\_\_.

A. About 50

B. About fifteen

C. 25

D. We don't know

## (B)

阅读短文，然后根据内容判断正(√)误(×)。

Tom's mother looks at Tom's shoes and says: "Tom, look at your shoes .How dirty they are! You must clean them." "Oh! Mother, but I cleaned them yesterday." " says the boy." They are dirty now. You must clean them again." "I don't want to clean them again. If I clean them today, they are going to be dirty again tomorrow."

Tom's mother thinks for a moment and says, "All right."

In the evening Tom comes back from school. He is very hungry. "Mum give me something to eat," he says. "You have your breakfast in the morning, Tom, and you have lunch at school." his mother says.

"I'm hungry again. I want to eat something."

"Oh hungry? But you eat something today, you are going to be hungry again tomorrow."

判断正 (T) 误 (F)

6. Tom likes eating something in the evening.

7. Tom's mother wants him to clean his shoes.

8. Tom thinks he must listen to his mother.

9. In the evening Tom's mother helps to clean Tom's shoes.

10. Tom wants to eat something for supper.

## 六、书面表达

### 1. 句子翻译

(1) 他每天早上七点上学。

(2) 我儿子喜欢看电视和听音乐。

(3) 一Tom 放学后打乒乓球吗?

一不。放学后他总是玩电脑游戏。

(4) 我妈妈通常周末去购物。

(5) 你下午 3 点半能到家吗?

### 2. 短文写作

(1)

以 My School day 为题写一篇短文, 描述一下自己一天的生活和学习情况。要求: 中心明确、语句通顺。60 词左右。

#### My School day

I get up at six in the morning. Then I wash my face and brush my teeth. I have breakfast at six-thirty, and then I go to school. I get to school at about seven-forty. Classes begin at eight. I have eight classes every day. At 12:15 I have lunch at school.

School is over at about five-thirty in the afternoon.

I have dinner at around seven. After dinner I do my homework. At nine, I take a shower and go to bed.



## (2)

请模仿范文，以 Mike's Saturday 为题写一篇 60 词左右的英语短文。

提示： from...to... 从……到……

时间 活动内容

7:00 起床

7:30 吃早饭

8:00—11:00 做家庭作业

12:00 吃午饭

14:00—17:00 与朋友一起踢足球

18:00 吃晚饭

19:00—21:00 在家看电视

21:30 去睡

Mike's Saturday

---



---



---

## ►►►► Unit 3 How do you get to school?

### \*知识清单

语言聚焦	单词	train <i>n.</i> 火车 bus <i>n.</i> 公共汽车 Subway <i>n.</i> 地铁 ride <i>v.</i> 骑; <i>n.</i> 旅程 car <i>n.</i> 小汽车 kilometer <i>n.</i> 千米; 公里 drive <i>v.</i> 开车 sixty <i>num.</i> 六十 seventy <i>num.</i> 七十 eighty <i>num.</i> 八十 ninety <i>num.</i> 九十 hundred <i>num.</i> 一百 far <i>adj. &amp; adv.</i> 远的; 远 by <i>prep.</i> 乘(交通工具) cross <i>v.</i> 穿过; 横过 river <i>n.</i> 江; 河 live <i>v.</i> 居住 boat <i>n.</i> 船 bridge <i>n.</i> 桥 leave <i>v.</i> 离开 village <i>n.</i> 村庄 afraid <i>adj.</i> 害怕; 畏惧 dream <i>n.</i> 梦想; <i>v.</i> 做梦 true <i>adj.</i> 真的
	短语	get to 到达 take the train/bus/subway 乘火车/公共汽车/地铁 ride a bike 骑自行车 drive a car 开车 every day 每天 think of 认为; 想起 between... and... 在……和……之间 come true 实现; 成为现实
	句型	(1) — How do you get to school? 你怎样到达学校? — I ride my bike. 我骑自行车。 (2) — How long does it take you to school? 你到学校要用多长时间? — About 20 minutes by bike. 骑自行车大约 20 分钟。 (3) — How far is it from your home to school? 你到学校要用多长时间? — About two kilometers. 大约 2 千米。 (4) For many students, it is easy to get to school. 对于很多学生来说, 到达学校很容易。 (5) It is their dream to have a bridge. 拥有一座桥梁是他们的梦想。

## \*语法精讲

### How 引导的特殊疑问句以及交通方式的表达

#### （一）how 引导的特殊疑问句

##### 1. 直接由 how 引导的特殊疑问句

（1）用来询问方式或手段，如：

How are they going to Shanghai? 他们怎样去上海？

How does Lily usually go to school? 莉莉通常怎样去学校？

（2）用来询问程度，如：

How is your weekend? 周末过得怎样？

How do you like the film? 你觉得这部电影怎么样？

（3）用来打招呼、问候或询问身体情况，如：

How is your mother today? 你妈妈今天身体好吗？

How are you? 你好吗？

（4）另外也可以询问天气，如：

How is the weather today? 今天天气怎么样？

2. how+形容词或副词，同样可以引导含义不同的特殊疑问句，如：how old, how long, how far, how often 等。

##### （1）【how old】

① 主要用来询问年龄。如：

How old is Mr. Li? 李先生多大年龄？

② 也可以用来询问建筑物的年头、历史等。如：

How old is this house? 这幢房子有多少年的历史了？

##### （2）【how long】

① 多用来询问长度。如：

How long is the Yellow River? 黄河有多长？

② 还能询问时间长短。如：

How long does it take you to go to school by bus every day?

你每天乘公交车上学花多长时间？

（3）【how far】提问路程的距离。如：

How far is it from your home to school? 从你家到学校有多远？

（4）【how many】主要对可数名词的数量进行提问。如：

How many students are there in your class? 你们班里有多少学生？

（5）【how much】提问不可数名词的量。如：

How much water is there in the glass? 杯子里有多少水？

（6）【how often】主要用来对动作发生的频率进行提问。如：

How often do you go to see your grandpa? 你多长时间去看你的爷爷？

## 【活用】

- ① —\_\_\_\_\_ is the shirt?  
—It's 80 yuan.  
A. How many                  B. How much                  C. What                  D. How
- ② —\_\_\_\_\_ is your grandma?  
—Over 80.  
A. How long                  B. How                  C. How old                  D. How many
- ③ —\_\_\_\_\_ do you visit your grandparents ?  
—Every week.  
A. How                  B. How long                  C. How much                  D. How often
- ④ —Sam 是怎样到学校的。  
—他通常乘公共汽车。  
—\_\_\_\_\_ does Sam get to school?  
—He often \_\_\_\_\_ the bus.
- ⑤ —你到学校要用多长时间?  
—步行大约 15 分钟  
—\_\_\_\_\_ does it \_\_\_\_\_ you to get to school?  
—About 15 minutes \_\_\_\_\_.
- ⑥ —从你家到公园有多远?  
—大约 3 千米。  
—\_\_\_\_\_ is it \_\_\_\_\_ your home to the park?  
—About 3 kilometers.

## (二) 交通方式的表达

1. 用“by+交通工具”表示交通方式。如: by bike, by bus, by car, by plane, by train, by subway 等。但是“步行”用 on foot, 而不是 by foot. 如:

They go to school by bus every day. 他们每天乘公共汽车去上学。

注意: by 后面的交通工具名词是单数而且名词前面不能加任何修饰词。

2. 用“take a/the +交通工具”表示交通方式。如: take a bus, take a train, take a ship, 但“骑自行车”要用 ride a bike 来表示。如:

Mr. Green often takes a bus to work. 格林先生常坐公共汽车去上班。

Jim rides a bike to school every day. 吉姆每天都骑自行车上学。

注: take +a/ the +交通工具的名词+ to+地点, 相当于 go/get to+地点+ by+交通工具 (或 go/get to+地点+ on/in+交通工具)。意为: “乘坐某种交通工具去某地”

如: take a bus to school= go to school by bus (或 go to school on a bus)

常用表达方式:

on a/ the bus 乘公共汽车

in a/ the car 乘小汽车

on a/ the/one's bike 骑自行车

3. 用某些动词短语来表示交通方式。如：

walk to: 步行去                  drive to: 开车去  
ride to: 骑马/车去              fly to: 乘飞机去等

注意：如果后面接地点副词 here, there, home 等。介词 to 应省去。如：

I walk to school.                  我步行去学校。  
I walk home every day.          我每天都步行回家。  
You can drive there.              你们可以开车去那儿。

4. 用“by+水、陆、空等”来表示交通方式。如：

by water: 从水路              by land: 经陆路  
by sea: 经海路                  by air: 乘飞机等。

We went to Guangzhou by air this summer holiday.  
今年暑假我们坐飞机去广州了。

### 【活用】

- ① I go to work on foot. (改为同义句)  
I \_\_\_\_\_ to work.
- ② We take the bus to the park on weekends. (改为同义句)  
We \_\_\_\_\_ to the park \_\_\_\_\_ on weekends.
- ③ She usually goes to Shanghai by plane. (改为同义句)  
She usually goes to Shanghai \_\_\_\_\_.
- ④ Ann often goes to Beijing by train. (对画线部分提问)  
\_\_\_\_\_ Ann often go to Beijing?

### \*知识辨析

辨析 1: hundred num. 一百

(1) **hundred** 前面有具体数词修饰时，不能加 S，如：one hundred, two hundred, three hundred

She has two hundred books. 她有 200 本书。

(2) **hundreds of** 当表示不确定的数目时 hundred 要加 S，而且要与 of 连用。

There are hundreds of students in our department. 我们系有几百名学生。

### 【活用】

- ① \_\_\_\_\_ students in our school are girls.  
A. hundred                  B. hundreds                  C. hundred of                  D. hundreds of
- ② —How many boys are there in your department?  
—About two \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. hundreds                  B. hundred                  C. hundreds of                  D. hundred of

辨析 2: How far “多远”，用来询问路程或距离，其答语为：It's... meters/miles/kilometers.  
“有……米/公里/千米”

## 知识拓展：表示两地距离的表达方法

- (1) It's+ 路程+ from +地点 A+ to+地点 B.

It's two kilometers from my home to the school. 我家离学校有两千米。

- (2) 地点 A+ is+ 路程+ from +地点 B.

My home is five kilometers from the zoo. 我家离动物园有 5 千米。

## 【活用】

- ① It's three kilometers from my home to the park. (对画线部分提问)

\_\_\_\_\_ is it from your home to the park?

- ② It's 280 kilometers from my hometown to Nanning. (改为同义句)

\_\_\_\_\_ is 280 kilometers \_\_\_\_\_ Nanning.

## 辨析 3: It takes sb. some time to do sth. 做某事花费某人多长时间

It takes me 3 hours to finish my homework. 做作业花了我三个小时的时间。

在这里, it 是形式主语, 指代后面的动词不定式, 动词不定式才是真正的主语。对该句型中的 some time 提问时用 how long “多长时间”。

## 【活用】

- ① It takes him 5 minutes \_\_\_\_\_ (brush) his teeth every morning.

- ② It took them 5 hours to finish the task. (对画线部分提问)

\_\_\_\_\_ did it take them to finish the task?

## 辨析 4: think of 认为

What do you think of the book? 你认为这本书怎么样?

## 知识拓展: think of 和 think about 用法区别

- (1) think of ① 想到, 考虑; ② 想起来, 记起; 想出来; ③ 关心;

- (2) think about 考虑, 思考 (一般是短时间的较仔细的考虑)

▲ think about 和 think of 这两个短语表示“考虑”、“对……有某种看法”时, 可以互换。例如:

Don't think of (about) me any more. 不要再考虑我。

They're thinking about (of) buying a new car. 他们正在考虑买一辆新车。

What do you think of (about) the film? 你认为那部影片怎么样?

▲ think of 表示下列意义时, 一般不和 think about 换用:

- ① 想要; 打算。例如:

Jim, are you thinking of doing your homework? 吉姆, 你打算做作业了吗?

- ② 想出; 想到。例如:

Who thought of the idea? 谁想出的这个主意?

- ③ 关心; 想着。例如:

My mum is always thinking of others. 我妈妈总是为别人着想。

- ④ 想起; 记得。例如:

I can't think of her name. 我想不起她的名字。

▲ think about 表示“回想过去的事情”、“考虑某计划是否切实可行”时，一般不和 think of 换用。例如：

I often thought about what you said. 我常常想到你说过的话。

I'll think about your suggestion, and give you an answer tomorrow.

我要考虑一下你的建议，明天给你答复。

### 【活用】

① 你认为我的裙子怎么样？

\_\_\_\_\_ do you \_\_\_\_\_ my skirt?

② How do you like your new skirt? (改为同义句)

\_\_\_\_\_ do you \_\_\_\_\_ your new skirt?

**辨析 5:** It's+ adj./n.+ to do sth. 做某事怎么样

It is important to drink enough water every day. 每天喝足够的水很重要。

● It 形式主语，没有实际意思，to drink enough water every day 真正主语，（真正的语序为：To drink enough water every day is important.）为了使句子平衡，不至于头重脚轻，使用了形式主语，而把真正主语放在后面。

**知识拓展：**It's + adj. + of/for sb. to do sth.

(1) it is +adj. of sb. to sth.

此结构中，形容词多是修饰 sb，表明人所具有的品质、特点。常用的形容词有：nice、kind、fine、honest、true、good、friendly、warm-hearted、bad、clever 等。例如：

It's nice of you to help me.

可以转换为：You are nice to help me. 你真好帮了我们。

(2) It is +adj. for sb. to do sth.

这个结构中，形容词多是修饰 sth，表示不定式短语内容所体现出的特点。常用形容词有：important、difficult、hard、easy、necessary、interesting、helpful、useful 等。例如：

It's hard for us to learn a foreign language. 对于我们来说学习一门外语很难。

此句型可以转换为 To learn a foreign language is hard.

● 简单来说，of，表示人的品质，for，表示对某人来说。

it is kind of sb.                      it is hard for sb.

### 【活用】

① It's interesting \_\_\_\_\_ (play) football.

② 成为一名演员是我的梦想。

\_\_\_\_\_ my dream \_\_\_\_\_ an actor.

**辨析 6:** many (much) : adj. & pron. 许多

两者都表示“许多”，但 many 修饰或代替可数名词（复数），与 few（少数）相对；而 much 用来修饰或代替不可数名词（单数），与 little（少量）相对。如：

Did you see many people there? 你在那儿看见许多人了吗?

Do you have much money left? 你剩的钱多吗?

### 【活用】

用 many/much 完成下列句子

① She likes eating so \_\_\_\_\_ meat, so she is getting fatter and fatter.

② My mum has \_\_\_\_\_ beautiful hats

辨析 7: between *prep.* 介于……之间

(1) between 介词“介于……之间”，强调在两者之间

The tree is between two houses. 那棵树在两座房子之间。

(2) between... and... “在……和……之间”，两者为两个并列名词。

The supermarket is between our house and the school. 超市位于我家和学校之间。

### 【活用】

① There is a bridge \_\_\_\_\_ the two roads.

② My school is \_\_\_\_\_ the hospital \_\_\_\_\_ the bank.

## ☆达标检测

### 一、用所给词的适当形式填空

1. There are \_\_\_\_\_ (hundred) of people dancing at the square every night.

2. How long does it take you \_\_\_\_\_ (walk) to your school.

3. My uncle \_\_\_\_\_ (not take) the car to work.

4. It's about five \_\_\_\_\_ (kilometer) from my home to the park?

5. It takes me an hour \_\_\_\_\_ (finish) my homework every day.

6. How \_\_\_\_\_ Jack often \_\_\_\_\_ (go) to the park.

7. Don't eat too \_\_\_\_\_ (quick). It's not good for your health

8. It is hard \_\_\_\_\_ (learn) English well.

9. Thank you very much for \_\_\_\_\_ (help) me with my English.

10. The \_\_\_\_\_ (village) in my village are very kind.

### 二、完成句子

1. 我婶婶乘地铁去上班。

My aunt \_\_\_\_\_ to work.

2. 林先生居住在上海。

Mr. Lin \_\_\_\_\_ Shanghai.

3. 我爸爸每天都看电视。

My father watches TV \_\_\_\_\_.

4. 做家庭作业通常花费我半个小时。

It usually \_\_\_\_\_ me half an hour \_\_\_\_\_ my

homework.

5. Mary 认为这次旅行怎么样？

\_\_\_\_\_ does Mary \_\_\_\_\_ the trip.

6. 李先生每天骑自行车去火车站。

Mr. Li \_\_\_\_\_ to the station every day.

7. 林飞每天上学得花多长时间？步行大约十分钟。

\_\_\_\_\_ does it \_\_\_\_\_ Lin fei to get to school?

It's \_\_\_\_\_ ten minutes on foot.

8. 从你家到医院有多远？大约三千米。

\_\_\_\_\_ is it \_\_\_\_\_ your home \_\_\_\_\_ the hospital?

It's about three kilometers.

9. 这个村的学生每天不得不乘船去上学。

The students in the village \_\_\_\_\_ go to school \_\_\_\_\_ every day.

10. 总有一天她的梦想会变成现实。

Her dream will \_\_\_\_\_ one day.

### 三、单项选择

1. The winter holiday is coming. Two \_\_\_\_\_ students in our school want to go hiking.  
A. hundred                      B. hundreds                      C. hundred of                      D. hundreds of

2. — \_\_\_\_\_ did you go to Beijing last week?

—By air.

A. When                      B. Where                      C. How                      D. Who

3. — \_\_\_\_\_ is it from your home to school?

—Three kilometers.

A. How far                      B. How much                      C. How soon                      D. How long

4. The students in the poor (贫穷的) village often go \_\_\_\_\_ to cross the river to school.

A. take a ropeway                      B. by a ropeway                      C. in a ropeway                      D. on a ropeway

5. My uncle usually \_\_\_\_\_ a bus to go to work.

A. take                      B. by                      C. on                      D. takes

6. How about \_\_\_\_\_ there by subway?

A. go                      B. to go                      C. goes                      D. going

7. How does Ken's mother \_\_\_\_\_ home?

A. get                      B. get to                      C. getting                      D. gets

8. — \_\_\_\_\_ does it take you to go to the zoo by bike?

—About 25 minutes.

A. How                      B. How far                      C. How long                      D. How many

9. —How are you going to the airport to meet your uncle?



- I'm going there \_\_\_\_\_ a car.  
A. by                      B. in                      C. to                      D. on
10. Do you usually go to school \_\_\_\_\_ bike or \_\_\_\_\_ foot?  
A. by; by                      B. on; by                      C. by ; on                      D. on; on
11. —How far is it from your home to the school?  
—It's about \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. 15 minutes walk                      B. 15 minutes' walk  
C. 15 minute's walk                      D. 15 minutes's walk
12. It's only two kilometers \_\_\_\_\_ my home \_\_\_\_\_ the supermarket.  
A. from; with                      B. in; to                      C. at; in                      D. from; to
13. Some students have to \_\_\_\_\_ a boat to get \_\_\_\_\_ home.  
A. take; to                      B. take; /                      C. takes; /                      D. takes; to
14. Tom goes to school \_\_\_\_\_ every day. It's 10 minutes' walk from his home to school.  
A. in a bus                      B. by plane                      C. on foot                      D. by boat
15. \_\_\_\_\_ she sometimes \_\_\_\_\_ to school?  
A. Does ,walks                      B. Is ,walking                      C. Does, walk                      D. Is, walk
16. It'll \_\_\_\_\_ him a lot of time to practice it, but I'm sure he can learn a lot from it.  
A. spend                      B. take                      C. pay                      D. cost
17. How long did it take you \_\_\_\_\_ the room last Sunday?  
A. clean                      B. to clean                      C. cleaning                      D. .cleaned
18. \_\_\_\_\_ takes him about thirty minutes \_\_\_\_\_ home.  
A. That; get to                      B. It; get to                      C. This; to get                      D. It; to get
19. It's interesting \_\_\_\_\_ us to swim in the river.  
A. of                      B. in                      C. with                      D. for
20. It's kind \_\_\_\_\_ you to come and help me on such a cold night.  
A. at                      B. of                      C. with                      D. for
21. I believe it's important \_\_\_\_\_ eight hours a night .  
A. to sleep                      B. .sleep                      C. sleeps                      D. slept
22. —How do you \_\_\_\_\_ the story?  
—It's boring.  
A. think of                      B. think about                      C. like                      D. get to
23. What do you \_\_\_\_\_ this new club? It's nice and big.  
A. get to                      B. think of                      C. live to                      D. go to
24. I like the party very much, but I \_\_\_\_\_ go home. It's late.  
A. may                      B. can                      C. can't                      D. have to
25. Our English teacher is so good. He never gives us \_\_\_\_\_ homework.  
A. a lot                      B. too many                      C. too much                      D. much too
26. —\_\_\_\_\_ do you visit your grandparents? —Every week.

- A. How                      B. How long                      C. How much                      D. How often
27. You should try to eat \_\_\_\_\_. Don't eat junk food .  
 A. healthy something                      B. healthy nothing  
 C. something healthy                      D. nothing healthy
28. Mr. Han has a \_\_\_\_\_ son and he is happy.  
 A. 3 year old                      B. 3-year-old                      C. 3-years-old                      D. 3 years old
29. The clothes store is between the part \_\_\_\_\_ the zoo.  
 A. on                      B. at                      C. and                      D. or
30. I believe your dream will \_\_\_\_\_ in the future if you work hard.  
 A. come to true                      B. come true                      C. come back                      D. come a true

#### 四、完形填空

My name is Bob. I'm a middle school student. My home is about two miles   1   school. I usually leave school at   2   6:30. I usually get to school   3  . It takes me about 20 minutes. But sometimes I go there   4  . It takes   5   only ten minutes.

My friend Nick, usually goes to school by bus. He usually   6   early. Then he has   7   quick breakfast and goes to school at six. First he   8   to the bus stop. Then the bus takes   9   to school. It usually takes him forty minutes to get to school.

There are different   10   for us to go to school.

- |               |                |                |             |
|---------------|----------------|----------------|-------------|
| 1. A. from    | B. far         | C. away        | D. long     |
| 2. A. to      | B. about       | C. for         | D. away     |
| 3. A. on feet | B. ride a bike | C. on foot     | D. walk     |
| 4. A. on bike | B. by bike     | C. by the bike | D. by bikes |
| 5. A. I       | B. my          | C. me          | D. mine     |
| 6. A. gets up | B. get up      | C. got up      | D. gets     |
| 7. A. the     | B. a           | C. an          | D. /        |
| 8. A. walk    | B. on foot     | C. walks       | D. on feet  |
| 9. A. he      | B. his         | C. himself     | D. him      |
| 10. A. ways   | B. way         | C. the way     | D. the ways |

#### 五、阅读理解

##### (A)

阅读短文，选择正确答案。

Many people like to travel (旅行) by plane, but I don't like it because an airport (飞机场) is usually far from the city. You have to get there early and wait for (等待) hours for the plane to take off (起飞) and it is often late. You can't open the windows. You can't choose (选择) the food. Planes are fast, but they still take hours to go out of the airport and into the city.

I like traveling by train. I think trains are safe. Railway stations are usually in cities. When you are late (晚的) for a train, you can catch another one. You can walk around in the train and

open the windows. You can see many interesting things on your way. I know it takes a little more time.

I also like cars. You can start your journey (旅行) when you want to, and you don't need to get to a railway station or a bus stop. Also you can carry many things with you in a car. But sometimes there are too many cars on the road.

1. Why do many people like to travel by plane?
 

A. Because it's fast.	B. Because it's safe.
C. Because you can walk around in the plane.	D. Because it's cheap.
2. Which is NOT the good thing about the train?
 

A. It is safe.	B. It takes a little more time.
C. You can open the windows.	D. You can walk around in the train.
3. If you want to take a lot of things with you, what do you take to go out?
 

A. A bus.	B. A car.	C. A train.	D. A bike.
-----------	-----------	-------------	------------
4. What is the bad thing about the car?
 

A. You needn't go to a station.	B. You can start your journey when you want to.
C. There are too many cars on the road.	D. You needn't go to a bus stop.
5. What does the writer think of the plane, train and car?
 

A. He thinks it takes a lot of time to go to and get out of the airport.	B. He likes to take a train because it takes a little more time.
C. He likes to take a car because he has a car.	D. He likes to take a plane because it's fast.

(B)

阅读短文，然后根据内容判断正(√) 误(×)。

People go to work in different ways. Some people go to work on foot because they live near their workplaces. Some people go to work by bike because they live far away from their workplaces, or they like riding bikes. They think it's good for their health. Today more people have private (私人的) cars, so they can go to work in their cars. In the south of China, many people even go to work by boat because water is around their houses. Will people go to work by plane? I think so, if necessary(如果必要的话).

根据短文内容，判断句子正(T) 误(F)。

6. All people like to go to work by bike.
7. Some people think it's good for their health to go to work by bike.
8. Today more people drive to work.
9. In the north of China, many people go to work by boat
10. The writer thinks some people will go to work by plane if necessary.

## 六、书面表达

### 1. 句子翻译

(1) 周末我喜欢骑自行车。

---

(2) 我总是步行去那儿。

---

(3) 通常我用一个小时写作业。

---

(4) Mike 是一位十二岁的男孩儿。

---

(5) 我希望你的梦想将能实现。

---

### 2. 短文写作

(1)

你的朋友 Mary 打算从北京来济南看望你，根据图示内容写一封信，告诉她如何到你家。词数：70 左右。

范文：

Dear Mary,

I'm very glad you are coming to visit me. I know you will take a train from Beijing to Jinan. When you get to Jinan Railway Station, you can take a No. 15 bus from Jinan Railway Station to Jie fang Road. It will take you about 30 minutes. Get off at the bus stop. And my home is across from the bus stop. You can walk across the road and find my home.

I hope you have a good trip.

Yours.

Yang Ming.

(2)

根据汉语提示，请模仿范文，用英语写一篇短文，不少于 70 词。

李丽是我的好朋友，她在青岛上学。她的家距离学校大约 3 公里，通常她骑自行车去上学，大约用 20 分钟。下雨时她乘公交车，大约 8 分钟。她父母在离家 10 公里的一家医院工作，每天开小汽车去上班，大约需要 10 分钟。

提示词汇：rain v. 下雨

---

---

---

---

---

---

## ▶▶▶▶ Unit 4 Don't eat in class!

### \*知识清单

语言聚焦	单词	rule <i>n.</i> 规则      arrive <i>v.</i> 到达      hall <i>n.</i> 大厅; 礼堂      fight <i>v.</i> 打架; 战斗 outside <i>adj.</i> 外面的; <i>adv.</i> 在外面      wear <i>v.</i> 穿; 戴      bring <i>v.</i> 带来; 取来      important <i>adj.</i> 重要的 uniform <i>n.</i> 制服      quiet <i>adj.</i> 安静的      before <i>prep. &amp; conj.</i> 在……以前; <i>adv.</i> 以前 dirty <i>adj.</i> 脏的      kitchen <i>n.</i> 厨房      relax <i>v.</i> 放松      noisy <i>adj.</i> 吵闹的      read <i>v.</i> 读; 阅读 terrible <i>adj.</i> 可怕的; 非常讨厌的      feel <i>v.</i> 感受; 感觉      remember <i>v.</i> 记住、记起 luck <i>n.</i> 幸运; 运气      keep <i>v.</i> 保持; 保留      hair <i>n.</i> 头发
	短语	in class 在课上      arrive late for class = be late for class 上课迟到      be on time 准时 in the hallway 在走廊上      dining hall 餐厅      listen to... 听……      a lot of 许多 have to 不得不      make (up) rules 制订规则      go out 外出      school uniforms 校服 I see 我明白了      do the dishes 清洗餐具      make one's bed 铺床 follow the rules 遵守规则      be strict with sb. 对某人严格要求
	句型	(1) Don't arrive late for class. 上课不要迟到。 (2) Don't eat in the classroom. 上课不要吃东西。 (3) — What are the rules? 规则是什么? — We must be on time for class. 外面必须按时上课。 (4) — Can we wear a hat in class? 在教室里可以戴帽子吗? — Yes, we can./ No, we can't. 是的, 可以。/不, 不可以。

### \*语法精讲

#### 祈使句

祈使句是用来表示请求、命令、叮嘱、号召或者劝告等的句子, 这类句子的主语常是第二人称 *you*, 也就是听话者, 因而 *you* 常省去了。祈使句的开头是动词原形。

##### (一) 肯定的祈使句:

- (1) 实义动词原形+其他;
- (2) *be* 动词原形+形容词+其他;
- (3) Let sb. do sth.

Look out! 小心!

Wait here for me! 在这等我!

Be sure to come here on time! 务必准时来到这里!

Let me help you. 让我来帮你。

（二）否定的祈使句：

祈使句的否定形式多以 do not（常缩写成 don't）开头，再加上动词原形。

（1）Don't+实义动词原形+ 其他；

（2）Don't be+形容词+其他；

（3）Don't let sb. do sth.

（4）No+ V.ing; No+ n.

Don't arrive late for school. 上学别迟到。

Don't be late! 别迟到！

Don't let me know. 别让我知道。

No swimming. 禁止游泳。

No photos. 禁止拍照。

【活用】

① 男孩们，到这儿来。

\_\_\_\_\_ here, boys.

② 在图书管理要保持安静。

\_\_\_\_\_ in the library.

③ 不要在教室里吃东西。

\_\_\_\_\_ in the classroom.

④ 让我们乘坐公共汽车到那儿吧。

\_\_\_\_\_ the bus to get there.

⑤ 医院禁止吸烟。

\_\_\_\_\_ in the hospital.

\*知识辨析

辨析 1: arrive v. 到达

Don't arrive late for class. 上课别迟到。

知识拓展：arrive in 和 arrive at 的区别：

（1）arrive in 后面一般接国家，大城市之类表示大范围的地点。例如：

When did you arrive in Shanghai?

It was the cold season when I arrived in London.

（2）arrive at 后面一般接:station, airport, destination 等表示小范围的地点。例如：

We arrived at the Beijing Railway Station at 11:00 pm last night.

When we arrived at the hospital, it's midnight.

【活用】

① We must arrive \_\_\_\_\_ the village before 12a.m.

A. in

B. at

C. to

D. on

② They will arrive \_\_\_\_\_ Shanghai tomorrow.

A. to

B. in

C. at

D. of

**辨析 2: wear v. 穿, 戴**

We always have to wear the school uniform on Monday.

周一我们总得穿校服。

**知识拓展: wear、dress、put on、be in 的用法区别**

(1) wear 指已经穿在身上这个状态, 后面接穿在身上的东西。可用于穿衣、穿鞋、戴帽子, 戴手套、佩戴首饰等。

He wears red T-shirt today. 今天他穿着红色 T 恤。

(2) dress 有“穿着”, “打扮”的意思, 但只用于穿衣, 它既表示动作, 又表状态, 常用于下列结构: dress sb. / oneself“给某人穿衣服”(动作)、get dressed“穿上衣服”和 be dressed in “穿着……”(状态)等

The young mother dresses her son with beautiful clothes every day.

这位年轻的妈妈每天都给他儿子穿上漂亮的衣服。

(3) put on 指“戴上”, “穿上”, 表示穿衣服的动作。

Put on your coat. 把你的外套穿上。

(4) be in 意为“穿着”, 表示穿的状态, 后可接衣服, 也可以直接跟颜色, 表示“穿着……颜色的衣服”。

### 【活用】

① We have to \_\_\_\_\_ the school uniform every day

A. wear

B. put on

C. dress

D. in

② Kate \_\_\_\_\_ her brother every day.

A. wear

B. is in

C. dresses

D. put on

③ You must \_\_\_\_\_ your coat. It's cold today

A. wears

B. dresses

C. is in

D. put on

④ Mary \_\_\_\_\_ a green skirt

A. wear

B. is in

C. dresses

D. put on

**辨析 3: have to “必须、不得不”, 后接动词原形。**

(1) 结构: 主语 + have to + 动词原形 + 其他 (一般现在时, 主语是第三人称单数时, 用 has to; 句子是过去时, 用 had to.)

We have to get to school on time.

我们必须按时到校。

Mary has to practice the piano every day.

玛丽每天必须练习弹钢琴。

I had to get up at 6:00 am yesterday.

昨天我不得不早上 6 点起床。

(2) 否定形式: 主语 + don't have to + 动词原形 + 其他 (一般现在时, 主语是第三人

称单数时，用 doesn't have to. 句子是过去时，用 didn't have to)

He doesn't have to wear a uniform.

他不必穿制服。

Jim didn't have to do his homework at once.

吉姆不必马上完成作业。

(3) 疑问句: Do (Does 或 Did) + 主语 + have to + 动词原形 + 其他

Do you have to stay at home on weekends?

周末你必须呆在家里吗?

Yes, I do. / No, I don't.

是的，我必须。不，我不必。

Did he have to go to bed before 11:00 on weekends?

周末他不得不 11 点前上床睡觉吗?

### 知识拓展: must 的用法

must 表示说话人的主观看法，及主观上的必要性，还用于命令或愿望。只用于现在时，无人称和单数的变化。在表示过去、将来和完成时，用 have to 的相应形式来代替 must。

- 在表示有做某一个动作的必要和义务，它的意思是“必须，应该”。

You must finish your homework first. 你必须先完成作业。

- 表示有很大把握的判断或者推测，意思是“一定，准是”。

The tall man must be your father. 那个高个子男人一定是你的爸爸。

- 以 must 开头的一般疑问句，否定回答用 needn't (不必要)，不用 mustn't (不允许)，mustn't 常用于否定句中表示“不允许，禁止”。

—Must I go there on foot? 我必须得走过去吗?

—No, you needn't. 不，你不需要。

You mustn't park your car here. 你的车不允许停在这儿。

### 【活用】

① It's cold these day, so I \_\_\_\_\_ stay at home.

A. must

B. have to

C. must to

D. can

② You \_\_\_\_\_ play with fire. It's dangerous.

A. mustn't

B. may not

C. can't

D. needn't

### 辨析 4: practice

(1) 作动词，意为“练习，实践” practice + 名词/代词/ doing sth.

I practice speaking English every day.

我每天都练习讲英语。

(2) 作名词，意为“练习”，常用作不可数名词。

I need a lot of practice to speak English well.

为了讲好英语，我需要很多练习。



## 【活用】

- ① His sister practices \_\_\_\_\_ the violin every day.  
A. play                      B. playing                      C. to play                      D. plays
- ② We need more \_\_\_\_\_ to get good marks.  
A. practices                      B. practice                      C. practicing                      D. to practice

辨析 5: too many + 可数名词复数 太多的……

There are too many rules in my family. 我家有太多的规定。

知识拓展: too many; too much; much too 的用法区别

这三个词语的主要区别在于它们的中心词以及它们所修饰的词不同。三者之中的前一个词都是修饰词, 用来加强语气, 后一个词是中心词。因此, 在使用时只需要考虑后一个词的用法就行了。分述如下:

(1) too many 的中心词是 many, 用法与 many 相同, 用来修饰复数可数名词。He's got too many questions to ask you. 他有很多问题要问你。

(2) too much 的中心词是 much, 用法与 much 相同, 用来修饰不可数名词。

Nancy spent too much money on clothes. 南希花太多钱买衣服。

另外, too much 还可作名词性短语, 用作宾语; 也可作副词性短语, 在句中用作状语, 修饰动词。例如:

You've given me too much. 你给我的太多了。

You talked too much at the meeting. 你在会上讲得太多了。

(3) much too 的中心词是 too, 用法与 too 相同, 用来修饰原级形容词或副词。You're speaking much too fast. Slow down.

你说话太快了, 慢点。

It's much too cold outside. You'd better put on your overcoat.

外面太冷了, 你最好把大衣穿上。

## 【活用】

- ① I don't have \_\_\_\_\_ time for games.  
A. too many                      B. too much                      C. much too                      D. many too
- ② There are \_\_\_\_\_ rules in our company.  
A. too much                      B. too many                      C. much too                      D. many too
- ③ The shirt is \_\_\_\_\_ small for her.  
A. too much                      B. too many                      C. many too                      D. much too

辨析 6: keep v. 保持; 保留

(1) keep 用作及物动词, 意为“(暂时)保管、保存、遵守(诺言、法律、条约等)、保守(秘密)”等。

Please keep the book well.

请好好地保存这本书。

My father who always keeps his words.

我爸爸是一个说话算数的人。

(2) keep 用作及物动词，常用句型为“keep+ 宾语 + 宾语补足语”，意为“使……保持某种状态”，可分为以下三种情况：

① keep+ 宾语 + 形容词 / 副词。

Please keep the window open. 请把窗开着。

② keep+ 宾语 + 介词短语。

Please keep your hands behind your back. 请把手放在背后。

③ Keep+ 宾语 + V.ing 形式。如：

Don't keep the worker working day and night.

不要让工人不分白天黑夜的工作。

(3) “keep+ V.ing 形式”或“keep on+ V.ing 形式”，表示“继续 / 一直 / 老是 / 反复做某事”。

The old man keeps on standing there still.

那老人一直站在那里，一动也不动。

(4) keep 用作连系动词时，与后面的形容词构成系表结构，意为“保持某种状态”。

You must look after yourself and keep healthy.

你一定要照顾自己，保持身体健康。

### 【活用】

- ① The rain is so heavy, but he keeps \_\_\_\_\_ in the rain waiting for his girl friend.  
A. stand                      B. standing                      C. to stand                      D. stands
- ② We should eat more fruit and vegetables to keep \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. health                      B. healthy                      C. to health                      D. unhealthy

辨析 7: have fun 过得愉快：玩得高兴；have fun +V.ing 做……过得愉快

I never have fun at home because of too many rules. 我从不快乐，因为家里规则太多。

We have fun playing games every day. 我们每天做游戏过得很愉快。

### 【活用】

- ① The zoo is a good place to \_\_\_\_\_ .  
A. having fun                      B. have fun                      C. funny                      D. have funny
- ② We have fun \_\_\_\_\_ in the river in summer.  
A. swimming                      B. swim                      C. to swim                      D. swims

## ☆达标检测

### 一、用所给词的适当形式填空

1. \_\_\_\_\_ (not) talk. It's time for class.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ (not be) late. It's your first day to school.

3. My mother doesn't let me \_\_\_\_\_ (go) out at midnight.
4. The teacher told me \_\_\_\_\_ (not be) late again.
5. My brother practices \_\_\_\_\_ (play) basketball every day.
6. Mike can't playing computer games because he \_\_\_\_\_ (have) to do his homework.

7. I often do the \_\_\_\_\_ (dish) at home.
8. The man keeps the monkey \_\_\_\_\_ (run) all the time.
9. Don't be \_\_\_\_\_ (noise), boys and girls.
10. I must \_\_\_\_\_ (finish) my homework before going out.

## 二、完成句子

1. 我们不能在教室里练习吉他。  
We can't \_\_\_\_\_ the guitar in the classroom.
2. 你必须在 11 点前上床睡觉吗?  
Do you have to \_\_\_\_\_ 11:00?
3. 我觉得我家的约束太多了。  
I think I have \_\_\_\_\_ rules in my house.
4. 你认为那些规定怎么样?  
\_\_\_\_\_ do you \_\_\_\_\_ that rules?
5. 我们不能在教室里吃东西。  
We can't \_\_\_\_\_ in the \_\_\_\_\_.
6. 别在走廊里跑, 看看墙上的校规。  
\_\_\_\_\_ run in the \_\_\_\_\_. \_\_\_\_\_ the school \_\_\_\_\_ on the wall.
7. 现在起床整理你的床铺。  
Get up now and \_\_\_\_\_.
8. 晚餐过后 Nancy 得清洗餐具。  
Nancy \_\_\_\_\_ the dishes after dinner.
9. 公园是个娱乐的好地方。  
The park is a good place to \_\_\_\_\_.
10. 记得晚上做作业。  
\_\_\_\_\_ do your homework in the evening.

## 三、单项选择

1. Don't \_\_\_\_\_ TV too much, Tom.  
A. watch                      B. watching                      C. to watch                      D. to watching
2. \_\_\_\_\_ worry about me Mom. I've grown up.  
A. Don't                      B. Don't be                      C. Not                      D. Not be
3. Don't arrive late for class again, \_\_\_\_\_?  
A. do you                      B. aren't you                      C. will you                      D. don't you

4. \_\_\_\_\_ sleeping in class.  
A. Can't                      B. Don't                      C. No                      D. Not
5. Please \_\_\_\_\_ play basketball here.  
A. please                      B. do                      C. don't                      D. Not
6. \_\_\_\_\_ in the library.  
A. No talk                      B. Not talking                      C. No talking                      D. Not talk
7. "No \_\_\_\_\_ !" says the sign.  
A. smoke                      B. smoking                      C. smokes                      D. to smoke
8. \_\_\_\_\_ away this dirty shirt and \_\_\_\_\_ me a clean one.  
A. Take; bring                      B. To take; to bring  
C. Taking; bringing                      D. To take; bringing
9. He arrives \_\_\_\_\_ here \_\_\_\_\_ a cold night.  
A. /;at                      B. at; at                      C. /;on                      D. in; on
10. —What time did he \_\_\_\_\_ the bus station?  
—At about 4:30 p.m.  
A. come                      B. go                      C. arrive                      D. arrive at
11. There is \_\_\_\_\_ milk on the floor.  
A. too many                      B. too much                      C. much too                      D. many too
12. There are \_\_\_\_\_ rules in my family.  
A. too many                      B. too much                      C. much too                      D. many too
13. I have \_\_\_\_\_ skirts and this one is \_\_\_\_\_ large for me, so you can take it if you like.  
A. too many; too much                      B. too much; much too  
C. too many; much too                      D. too much; too many
14. He often \_\_\_\_\_ English with the foreign teachers.  
A. practice speak                      B. practices speak  
C. practice speaking                      D. practices speaking
15. It's very warm outside. You \_\_\_\_\_ wear the coat.  
A. must                      B. don't have to                      C. have to                      D. mustn't
16. Does she \_\_\_\_\_ clean the classroom today?  
A. has to                      B. have to                      C. has                      D. have
17. —Do I have to come back home early tonight?  
—Yes, you \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. can                      B. may                      C. must                      D. should
18. —Must I go now, Mom?  
—No, you \_\_\_\_\_. You can go tomorrow.  
A. mustn't                      B. can't                      C. shouldn't                      D. needn't
19. It's raining all day, so I \_\_\_\_\_ stay at home.  
A. must                      B. have to                      C. must to                      D. can

20. The girl \_\_\_\_\_ red dress is my friend's daughter.  
A. with                      B. wear                      C. put on                      D. in
21. Students can't \_\_\_\_\_ hats in the classroom.  
A. put on                      B. wear                      C. in                      D. wearing
22. —May I take the book out of the library ?  
—No, you can't. You \_\_\_\_\_ read it here .It's the rule.  
A. must                      B. would                      C. may                      D. might
23. You \_\_\_\_\_ play football on the road, It's dangerous.  
A. can                      B. must                      C. mustn't                      D. may
24. Your mother \_\_\_\_\_ here, she has gone to Shanghai.  
A. must be                      B. could be                      C. may be                      D. can't be
25. Does your father always wear \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
A. uniform                      B. an uniform                      C. a uniform                      D. two uniform
26. It's too hot. Please keep the windows \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. opened                      B. closed                      C. open                      D. is closing
27. We should eat more fruit to keep ourselves \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. health                      B. healthy                      C. unhealthy                      D. strongly
28. The old man keeps \_\_\_\_\_ every day.  
A. exercise                      B. exercises                      C. to exercise                      D. exercising
29. He's never \_\_\_\_\_ class.  
A. arrive                      B. late for                      C. arrive late                      D. late
30. Let's \_\_\_\_\_ our dorm's (寝室的) rules.  
A. get                      B. set                      C. make                      D. plan

#### 四、完形填空

We can see many traffic signs (交通标志) on 1 sides of the roads .Some 2 the drivers 3 to do, others tell them what not to do .

The traffic signs are the traffic rules. 4 people must obey (遵守) the rules and mustn't break (违反) them. Each traffic sign 5 its meaning. Do you see the sign "P"? Do you know its meaning ? In big cities, there are 6 cars, trucks and buses . They can't stop on the streets 7 any time . If a driver wants to stop his car, he must 8 a place for his car—a car stop. A car stop 9 a special "hotel" and it's for cars to live in. "P" is the first letter of the word "Park" (停车) and it means "You can stop your car here!" 10 important to obey the traffic rules.

- |            |         |         |            |
|------------|---------|---------|------------|
| 1. A. all  | B. any  | C. both | D. every   |
| 2. A. say  | B. tell | C. talk | D. speak   |
| 3. A. that | B. what | C. why  | D. how     |
| 4. A. All  | B. Some | C. Many | D. Lots of |
| 5. A. have | B. has  | C. had  | D. have to |

- |                |              |             |           |
|----------------|--------------|-------------|-----------|
| 6. A. too much | B. too many  | C. a lot    | D. lot of |
| 7. A. at       | B. in        | C. on       | D. for    |
| 8. A. look at  | B. look like | C. look for | D. finds  |
| 9. A. like     | B. is like   | C. likes    | D. has    |
| 10. A. That    | B. It        | C. That's   | D. It's   |

### 五、阅读理解

#### (A)

阅读短文，选择正确答案。

Tom liked driving his car very fast, and one day he hit (撞) another car. Tom jumped out and ran to it. There was an old man in the car. He was very angry and said to Tom. "What are you doing? You nearly killed (撞死) me!"

"Yes," Tom answered, "I'm very sorry." He took a bottle out of his car and said, "Drink some of this. Then you'll feel better." He gave the old man some whisky (威士忌), and the man drank it, but then he shouted again, "You nearly killed me!" Tom gave him the bottle again. "I feel much better now. But why aren't you drinking?"

"Oh, well," said Tom, "I don't want any whisky now. I'm going to sit here to wait for the police."

- Tom \_\_\_\_\_ drove his car very fast.  
A. always                      B. sometimes                      C. never                      D. hardly
- One day he hit a car because \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. he wanted to kill the old man                      B. he drank a lot of whisky  
C. he drove his car too fast                      D. he had many bottles of whisky in his car
- The old man was very angry (生气) because \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. he wanted some whisky                      B. Harry hit his car  
C. he was Harry's father                      D. he drove his car too fast
- After drinking the bottle of whisky, the old man \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. felt much better                      B. was still (还) angry  
C. was very happy                      D. felt much worse
- What would probably (可能) happen to the old man?  
A. He would be hit again                      B. He would be sent (被送) to the hospital.  
C. He would lose his way.                      D. He would be fined (被处罚) by the police

#### (B)

阅读短文，然后根据内容判断正 (√) 误 (×)。

Every year thousands of people get hurt or die in road accidents. How can we make the roads safer? First we must obey the traffic rules. If everybody obeys the rules, the roads will be much safer. In our country traffic keeps on the right side of the road. Second, we must stop and look both ways before crossing the road. Look left, look right, and then look left again. Then, if

we are sure that the road is clear, we can cross the road. Third, it is good to help children, old people or blind (盲人) people to cross the road. Last, we must never play in the street.

根据短文内容，判断对 (T) 错 (F)。

6. Everybody must be careful and obey the traffic rules.
7. You must ride a bike on the right side of the road.
8. In our country, all the cars and buses keep on the left.
9. “The road is clear” means there is no car or bus that may hurt you.
10. We look only one way before crossing the road.

## 六、书面表达

### 1. 句子翻译

(1) 别在马路上跑。

---

(2) 我有太多的作业要做。

---

(3) 我的父母对我很严格。

---

(4) 你应该保持你的房间干净。(干净: clean)

---

(5) 明天 Smith 先生将到达上海。

---

### 2. 短文写作

#### (1)

在你的家里父母是否为你制定了一些规则，说说定了什么？你是怎么看的？

范文：

I have a busy weekend. On Saturday morning, I played sports. On Saturday afternoon, I watched TV. I saw an interesting talk show. In the evening I did my homework. Then I helped my mom with the housework. I was very tired but kind of fun. It was a funny day. I want to have more interesting weekends.

#### (2)

请模仿范文，根据提示，请以“School Rules”为题，写一篇短文。

提示：每所学校都有规章制度，下面是你们学校的一些规章制度，请你向一位新生 Lucy 作一下介绍。内容包括：

1. 上课不能迟到。
2. 教室要保持 (keep) 干净和安静。
3. 见到老师要问好。(greet)
4. 不允许在教室里吃东西。
5. 不许在课堂上听音乐，玩游戏。

6. 不要损害花草树木。(pick flowers; climb trees)

### School Rules

---

---

---

---

---

---

## ▶▶▶▶ Unit 5 Why do you like pandas?

### \*知识清单

语言聚焦	单词	panda <i>n.</i> 熊猫   zoo <i>n.</i> 动物园   tiger <i>n.</i> 老虎   koala <i>n.</i> 树袋熊   giraffe <i>n.</i> 长颈鹿   elephant <i>n.</i> 大象 lazy <i>adj.</i> 懒惰的   beautiful <i>adj.</i> 美丽的   Australia <i>n.</i> 澳大利亚   south <i>adj. &amp; n.</i> 南方的; 南方 Africa <i>n.</i> 非洲   friendly <i>adj.</i> 友好的   forget <i>v.</i> 忘记   lion <i>n.</i> 狮子   save <i>v.</i> 救助   cute <i>adj.</i> 可爱的 smart <i>adj.</i> 聪明的   cat <i>n.</i> 猫   kind <i>n.</i> 种类   shy <i>adj.</i> 害羞   kill <i>v.</i> 杀死   tree <i>n.</i> 树   pet <i>n.</i> 宠物
	短语	kind of 有几分, 有点儿   be from / come from 来自于   South Africa 南非   all day 整天 for a long time 很长时间   get lost 迷路   cut down 砍倒   twelve years old 十二岁 places with food and water 有食物和水的地方   in (great) danger 处于(极大)危险之中 things made of ivory 由象牙制成的东西
	句型	1. —Why do you like pandas? 你为什么喜欢熊猫? —Because they're kind of interesting. 因为它们有点儿有趣。 2. —Why does John like koalas? 约翰为什么喜欢树袋熊? —Because they're very cute. 因为它们非常可爱。 3. Elephants can walk for a long time and never get lost. 大象能走很长时间并且从不迷路。 4. But elephants are in great danger. 但是, 大象处于极大危险之中。 5. Today there are only about 3 000 elephants (over 100 000 before). 现在仅有大约 3000 头大象(之前超过 10 万头大象)。
语法	why 引导的特殊疑问句	

### \*语法精讲

why 引导的特殊疑问句

新知引导

根据要求补全下列教材中的句子, 并体会 why 引导的特殊疑问句及其答语。



(1) —你为什么喜欢熊猫?

—\_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ pandas?

—因为它们有点儿有趣。

—\_\_\_\_\_ they're kind of interesting.

(2) —你为什么不喜欢老虎?

—\_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_?

—因为它们真的很吓人。

—\_\_\_\_\_ they're really scary.

### 知识详解

1. Why 引导的特殊疑问句, 意为“为什么...?”, 其结构为“Why+一般疑问句”, 用来询问原因。

Why is he here? 他为什么会在这儿?

Why does he like this book? 他为什么喜欢这本书?

2. Why 引起的特殊疑问句一般用 because...来回答。Because 是连词, 作“因为”讲, 其后要接一个句子来陈述原因、理由。如:

—Why do you like monkeys? 你为什么喜欢猴子?

—Because they are very clever. 因为它们很聪明。

### 【活用】

(1) —\_\_\_\_\_ do you want to go to the zoo?

—Because I want to see the animals.

A. How

B. Why

C. Which

D. What

(2) —Why don't you walk to school.

—\_\_\_\_\_ my home is far from school.

A. Because

B. But

C. And

D. Before

## \*知识辨析

辨析 1: be from 来自

—Where are they from? 他们来自哪里?

—They are from South Africa. 他们来自南非。

【辨异】: be from 与 come from 的用法区别:

Be from: be 是连系动词, 句式的变化是有 be 来完成的, be 有人称和数的变化。如:

(1) I am from Shanghai. 我来自上海。

(2) Is he from England? 他来自英国吗?

come from: come 是实义动词, 句式的变化须借助助动词 do/does 来完成, 谓语动词 come 受主语影响。

如: (1) Lihua comes from Guangxi. 李华来自广西。

(2) They don't come from China. 他们不是来自中国。

**【活用】**

(1) —他来自哪里？他来自济南。

— \_\_\_\_\_ he \_\_\_\_\_?

— He \_\_\_\_\_ Jinan.

(2) Where is your friend from? (改为同义句)

Where \_\_\_\_\_ your friend \_\_\_\_\_?

**辨析 2: sleep v. & n. 睡觉**

She sleeps all day, and her name is lazy. 她整天睡觉，她的名字叫懒惰。

**【归纳】**

sleep 作为动词，意为：“睡觉，睡着”，强调睡眠的持续状态；也可作名词，意为“睡觉；睡眠”。

**【辨异】: sleep/go to bed 的用法区别**

Sleep 指睡觉、睡着的全过程，强调睡眠的持续状态。

go to bed 指“上床睡觉”，强调上床睡觉这一动作，但不一定睡着，与 get up “起床”相对。

**【活用】**

(1) I \_\_\_\_\_ eight hours a day. 我一天睡 8 个小时。

(2) It's time to \_\_\_\_\_. 该睡觉了。

**辨析 3: friendly adj. 友好的**

Pandas are friendly animals. 熊猫是友好的动物。

**【归纳】**

friendly 的用法

(1) friendly. 由名词 friend 加后缀-ly 转换而来，其反义词为 unfriendly “不友好的”。

(2) be friendly to sb. “对某人友好”，指对别人的态度好、热情，相当于 be kind to sb.。

**【活用】**

(1) We don't like to play with him because he is \_\_\_\_\_ (friendly).

(2) 玛丽对每个人都友好。

Mary is \_\_\_\_\_ everyone.

**辨析 4. one of... ……之一**

The elephant is one of Thailand's symbols. 大象是泰国的象征之一。

**【归纳】**

(1) one of... 后接可数名词的复数或代词的宾格。

(2) one of... 后接可数名词的复数作主语时，谓语动词用单数。

## 【活用】

吉姆是我其中的一位朋友。

(1) Jim is \_\_\_\_\_ my \_\_\_\_\_.

(2) One of the animals \_\_\_\_\_ (be) from South Africa.

辨析 5: forget v. 忘记; 遗忘

Don't forget my birthday. 不要忘记了我的生日。

拓展:

forget sth: 忘记某事。

如: Sorry, I forget your telephone number. 对不起, 我忘记你的电话号码了。

forget to do sth: 忘记要做某事 (事情还没做)。

如: Don't forget to turn off the lights. 不要忘记关灯。(灯还未关)

forget doing sth: 忘记做过某事 (事情已做过)。

如: I forget turning off the lights. 我忘记已把灯关上了。(灯已关了)

## 【活用】

(1) Don't forget \_\_\_\_\_ (clean) the classroom after class, children.

(2) 父母永远忘不了孩子们的生日。

Parents never \_\_\_\_\_.

## ☆ 达标检测

## 一、完成句子

1. 这些动物来自非洲。

These animals \_\_\_\_\_ Africa.

2. 你为什么不问问老师呢?

\_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ your teacher?

3. 对这个孩子来说, 过河有点难。

It's \_\_\_\_\_ difficult for the child to cross the river.

4. 她喜欢熊猫吗?

\_\_\_\_\_ she \_\_\_\_\_?

5. 但是大象处在很大的危险中。

But elephants are \_\_\_\_\_.

## 二、用所给词的适当形式填空

1. Please \_\_\_\_\_ (be) friendly to the animals.

2. Don't forget \_\_\_\_\_ (bring) your homework to school.

3. The girl gets \_\_\_\_\_ (lose) in the zoo, she can't find her mother.

4. Dog are \_\_\_\_\_ (friend) and they are also helpful.

5. Miss Black is very \_\_\_\_\_ (beauty).
6. One of the \_\_\_\_\_ (lion) is from South Africa.
7. She wants \_\_\_\_\_ (walk) through the park.
8. Why \_\_\_\_\_ he \_\_\_\_\_ (like) tigers?
9. There are some old books in these \_\_\_\_\_ (box).
10. The small elephant \_\_\_\_\_ (live) in Beijing Zoo.

### 三、单项选择

1. —Let's see the lions.  
—\_\_\_\_\_. Let's go.  
A. Thank you      B. You are welcome      C. That's boring      D. Sounds great
2. Does this lion \_\_\_\_\_ from Africa or America?  
A. be      B. is      C. come      D. go
3. Tigers are \_\_\_\_\_ danger.  
A. in      B. on      C. of      D. at
4. —Why do you like pandas?  
—Because they are very \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. cute      B. boring      C. scary      D. ugly
5. —What do you think of this book?  
—It's \_\_\_\_\_ interesting.  
A. kind of      B. kinds of      C. a kind of      D. a kind
6. —Why is John so \_\_\_\_\_ to you ?  
—Because he wants me to help him.  
A. clever      B. beautiful      C. smart      D. friendly
7. —Where \_\_\_\_\_ the lions from?  
—South Africa.  
A. may      B. are      C. do      D. can
8. —What does the baby like to do ?  
—She likes \_\_\_\_\_ her parents.  
A. to play with      B. to play to      C. play with      D. play to
9. —What's wrong with Jim?  
—He can't sleep \_\_\_\_\_ night so he can't get up \_\_\_\_\_ the morning.  
A. in; at      B. at ;in      C. in ;in      D. at; at
10. —This is Bill. Isn't he cute?  
—\_\_\_\_\_. I like him very much .  
A. Yes, he isn't      B. Yes, he is      C. No, he isn't      D. No, he is
11. —The song sounds beautiful.  
—\_\_\_\_\_ it is very difficult to sing.  
A. Because      B. So      C. And      D. But

12. The desk is made \_\_\_\_\_ bamboo.  
A. of                                      B. from                                      C. on                                      D. in
13. —\_\_\_\_\_ do you like milk?  
—Because they're very delicious.  
A. What                                      B. How                                      C. Why                                      D. Where
14. \_\_\_\_\_ the dogs are very interesting, \_\_\_\_\_ I like them very much.  
A. Because; so                                      B. So; because                                      C. So;/                                      D. Because;/
15. My sister likes to read books \_\_\_\_\_ pictures.  
A. in                                      B. at                                      C. for                                      D. with
16. There is an \_\_\_\_\_ in the zoo and we all like it.  
A. tiger                                      B. koala                                      C. panda                                      D. elephant
17. I like giraffes because they're very \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. scary                                      B. ugly                                      C. boring                                      D. beautiful
18. We know pandas are a \_\_\_\_\_ of China.  
A. kind                                      B. pet                                      C. symbol                                      D. place
19. His pet can walk \_\_\_\_\_ two legs.  
A. for                                      B. at                                      C. on                                      D. in
20. Does this lion \_\_\_\_\_ from Africa or America?  
A. be                                      B. is                                      C. come                                      D. go
21. —What \_\_\_\_\_ do you like ?  
—I like panda  
A. sports                                      B. subjects                                      C. music                                      D. animals
22. \_\_\_\_\_ play Game Bingo.  
A. Let                                      B. Let we                                      C. Let's                                      D. Let I
23. To be healthy, first we need to eat and \_\_\_\_\_ well.  
A. sleep                                      B. write                                      C. dance                                      D. learn
24. —\_\_\_\_\_ are the oranges \_\_\_\_\_?  
—Taiwan.  
A. What; from                                      B. Where; from                                      C. Where; come                                      D. When; from
25. Koalas are from \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. Africa                                      B. China                                      C. Australia                                      D. America
26. —I'm afraid we \_\_\_\_\_.  
—Don't worry. Here is a map. let's look at it.  
A. get to                                      B. get dressed                                      C. get lost                                      D. get up
26. Getting up early is one of my family \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. rule                                      B. a rule                                      C. rules                                      D. an rule
27. She is a \_\_\_\_\_ girl. She doesn't like talking to teachers.  
A. shy                                      B. beautiful                                      C. friendly                                      D. lovely
28. Trees are very important. We can't \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. cut them down      B. cut it down      C. cut down them      D. cut down it
29. I forget \_\_\_\_ my homework, so the teacher is very angry with me.  
A. do      B. doing      C. to do      D. does
30. We mustn't buy things \_\_\_\_\_ ivory.  
A. made of      B. make of      C. are made of      D. making of

#### 四、完形填空

Animals are our friends. We can find different   1   of animals. Some animals are living   2   big woods (森林). And some animals are living with   3  . Animals are very   4   to man. People can teach the elephant to do some heavy   5  . And they can also teach the dog to   6   the house. A watch dog is very   7  . It can help people in danger (危险). Children   8   dogs very much.   9   of children like to go to the zoo.   10   there are many animals in zoos. Zoo is a good place for children to get to know animals.

- |                |              |               |               |
|----------------|--------------|---------------|---------------|
| 1. A. kind     | B. a kinds   | C. a kind     | D kinds       |
| 2. A. at       | B. on        | C.in          | D. with       |
| 3. A. man      | B. men       | C. mans       | D. a man      |
| 4. A. useful   | B. lazy      | C. smart      | D. useless    |
| 5. A. works    | B. work      | C. a work     | D. working    |
| 6. A. look at  | B. look like | C. look after | D. look for   |
| 7. A. clever   | B. shy       | C. friendly   | D. ugly       |
| 8. A. would    | B. likes     | C. would like | D. like       |
| 9. A. Some     | B. Many      | C. Any        | D. Most (大多数) |
| 10. A. Because | B. And       | C. But        | D. So         |

#### 五、阅读理解

##### (A)

The wolves (狼) are very hungry. They go out to look for food. There are many sheep (羊) near the hill (山). There are also a few sheepdogs with them. The wolves think of an idea. They speak to the sheepdogs, "You are like us and we are brothers. But we have a very different life. We do what we like, and you must work for men. They make you look after their sheep. They eat meat and give you the bones (骨头). If you listen to us and give us the sheep, we can eat them together. All of us will be happy, right?" The dogs are happy and do like this. The wolves ask the dogs to go to their house. The sheepdogs go to the wolves' home. But the wolves eat them and then eat the sheep.

1. The wolves go out for food because \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. they see the sheep near the mountain      B. they see the sheepdogs  
C. they are hungry      D. they want to go out
2. The sheepdogs work for \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. men      B. sheep      C. wolves      D. dogs

3. Why do the wolves ask the sheepdogs to go to their home?
  - A. Because they want to eat them.
  - B. Because they want to be sheepdogs' friends.
  - C. Because they want to help sheepdogs to get freedom.
  - D. Because their home is near this mountain
4. What do the sheepdogs do?
  - A. play with the sheep.
  - B. look after the sheep.
  - C. work with men.
  - D. eat the bones.
5. What do you think of the wolves?
  - A. shy.
  - B. sly. (狡猾的)
  - C. kind.
  - D. lazy.

(B)

One day Mr. Fun goes to take a train. When the train moves, one of his shoes falls to the ground. The train goes faster and faster. He can't pick it up. Then he quickly takes off the other one and throws it to the ground near the first one. A boy on the train sees him and asks him, "Why do you do like that? You've lost your shoes." Mr. Fun says, "If a man picks them up, he can get a pair of shoes."

1. Mr Fun goes \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A. by bike
  - B. by subway
  - C. by train
  - D. on foot
2. When the train starts, the man lost \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A. his watch
  - B. his glasses
  - C. his coat
  - D. one of his shoes
3. Mr. Fun can't pick up his shoe, because \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A. he doesn't want to take it back
  - B. the little boy picks it up
  - C. the train runs faster and faster
  - D. the shoe is too old
4. \_\_\_\_\_ throws the other shoe.
  - A. Mr. Fun
  - B. The little boy
  - C. Nobody
  - D. The man and the boy
5. Which of the following sentences is true?
  - A. The boy wants the shoes.
  - B. Mr. Fun doesn't want the shoes.
  - C. Mr. Fun thinks a man can get a pair of shoes.
  - D. Mr. Fun wants to buy a pair of new shoes.

## 六、书面表达

### 1. 句子翻译

(1) 你为什么喜欢熊猫？因为它们很可爱。

(2) 狮子来自南非。

(3) 咱们去看老虎吧。

(4) 我很喜欢动物。

(5) 那个男孩有点害羞。

## 2. 短文写作

几乎每人都有自己喜爱的动物，那你喜欢的动物是什么呢？请你写一份电子邮件把你喜欢的动物告诉你的笔友。注意：写出它的特征及你喜爱它的原因，字数在 50 词左右。

\*成篇：

Dear Allan,

Thanks for your letter. Do you want to know about my favorite animals? Well, I like pandas best. I like pandas because they're from my mother country—China, and I think they are very beautiful and clever. I also like dolphins very much. Dolphins are very friendly and clever. I like seeing the dolphin show. And I like koalas, too. They sleep during the day, but at night get up and eat leaves. Aren't they very interesting?

Please write and tell me about your favorite animals.

Yours,  
Jane

## ►►►► Unit 6 I'm watching TV

### \*知识清单

语言聚焦	单词	Newspaper <i>n</i> 报纸 use <i>v</i> 使用 soup <i>n</i> 汤 wash <i>v</i> 洗 move <i>n</i> 电影 house <i>n</i> 房子 Drink <i>v</i> 喝 tomorrow <i>n</i> 明天 pool <i>n</i> 水池 shop <i>v</i> 购物 <i>n</i> 商店 supermarket <i>n</i> 超市 Study <i>v</i> 学习 young <i>adj.</i> 幼小的；年轻的 miss <i>v</i> 想念；错过 delicious <i>adj.</i> 美味的 Man→men (复数) <i>n</i> 男人；人 child→children <i>n</i> (复数) 儿童 America <i>n</i> →American <i>adj.</i> 美国的；美洲的. <i>n</i> 美国人
	短语	watch TV 看电视 read a newspaper 看报纸 talk on the phone 通过电话交谈 listen to music 听音乐 use the computer 使用电脑 make soup 做汤 wash the dishes 洗餐具 kind of 有点儿 living room 客厅 Dragon Boat Festival 端午节 eat out 去吃饭
	句型	1. —Why are you doing? 你在做什么? —I'm watching TV. 我在看电视。 2. —What's she doing? 她在做什么? —She's washing her clothes. 她在洗她的衣服。 3. —Are you doing your homework? 你在做你的家庭作业吗? —Yes, I am. / No, I'm not. I'm cleaning my room. 是的，我在做。/ 不，我没有。我在打扫我的房间。
语法	现在进行时	



## \*语法精讲

## 新知导引

根据要求补全句子，并体会现在进行时的含义及句式结构。

(1) —他在做什么？

—What \_\_\_\_\_ he \_\_\_\_\_?

—他正在洗衣服。

—\_\_\_\_\_ clothes.

(2) —你正在做作业吗？

—\_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ your homework?

—是的，我在做。

—yes, I \_\_\_\_\_.

## 知识详解

## 1. 现在进行时的用法（含义）

现在进行时表示现在（说话瞬间）正在进行或发生的动作；现在进行时也可以表示现阶段正在进行的动作。常见的标志性词语有 now, look, listen, these days, at the moment 等。

现在进行时的结构：主语+be+Ving.

(1) I am doing my homework at home now.

(2) Look! The cat is running up the tree.

(3) Listen! The birds are singing in the sky.

肯定式：be (am, is, are)+ 现在分词：如：I'm reading. 我在看书。

否定式：be (am, is, are)+ not + 现在分词：如：I'm not reading. 我没在看书。

一般疑问句：Am / Is / Are + 主语 + 现在分词如：Are you reading? 你在看书吗？

肯定回答：Yes, I am.

否定回答：No, I'm not.

注意：be (is, am, are)动词的形式要和主语保持一致。

2.现在分词的构成：一般在动词原形末尾加-ing；以不发音 e 结尾的，先去 e，再加-ing；以重读闭音节结尾的动词，如果末尾只有一个辅音字母，先双写这个辅音字母，再加-ing；以 ie 结尾的动词，通常变 ie 为 y，再加 -ing。

1. read—reading 2. eat—eating 3. write—writing 4. take—taking 5. run—running  
6. Swim—swimming 7. lie—lying

## \*知识辨析

辨析 1：This is...我是……

This is Jenny. 我是詹妮

【归纳】

This is...意为“我是……”

这是打电话的专用语，在英语习惯中，打电话时，一般用 this 表示“我”，用 that 表示“对方”而不用“I”或“you”。

如：—Hello, is that Marry speaking?你好，是玛丽吗？

—Yes, this is Marry. 是的，我是玛丽。

【活用】

—Who is that speaking?

— \_\_\_\_\_ Mike speaking.

A. I'm

B. My name

C. That is

D. This is

辨析 2：动词 read, watch, look, see

辨异：read, watch, look, see 的用法区别

Read, “阅读”，主要指书，报，杂志。watch, “（聚精会神地）看，注视”，看比赛，电视等。Look, 强调看的动作，是不及物动词，需跟介词\_\_\_\_\_再接宾语。See, “看到”，强调“看”的结果，还可以用于见朋友，看医生。

【活用】

(1) My father is \_\_\_\_\_ newspapers.

A. reading

B. watching

C. looking

D. seeing

(2) Tom is \_\_\_\_\_ TV now.

A. looking

B. watching

C. reading

D. seeing

辨析 3：other 的两种用法

(1) 用作形容词，意为“另外的；其他的”，修饰名词。

(2) 用作不定代词，意为“另外的人（或物），”后不能接名词。

【辨异】：other, the other, others, another, the others

Other: 三者或三者以上的其他人或物

The other: 两者中的另一个

Others: 剩余的另一些（并非全部）

The others: 剩余的全部

【活用】

(1) You can see elephants, tigers and \_\_\_\_\_ animals in the zoo.

A. other

B. the other

C. others

D. the others

(2) I have two apples. one is red, the \_\_\_\_\_ (另一个) is green.

辨析 4：shop v. 购物 n. 商店

Is she shopping? 她在购物吗？

There is a shop near my home. 我家附近有一个商店。

### 【归纳】

(1) shop 作为动词，意为“购物”。其现在分词为 shopping。常用短语：go shopping “去购物”；do the/some shopping “购物”；shopping center “购物中心”；shopping list “购物单”。

(2) shop 作为名词，意为“商店”。

### 【辨异】

shop: 多用来指专卖某一类型商品的小商店 (small store)，如 a coffee shop 咖啡店。

store: 多出现在美语中，指大型的百货商店、也可指任何大小规模的商店、店铺，如 a clothes store 服装店。

mall: 指一座大型建筑物、非露天区或一条街，内有很多商店 (shops/stores)、餐馆，有的也有影院。

### 【活用】

(1) 他们在超市里购物。

They \_\_\_\_\_ in the supermarket.

(2) Beijing is a good place to shop, and there are many big \_\_\_\_\_, like Wangfujing and Xidan.

A. shops

B. stores

C. malls

## ☆ 达标检测

### 一、完成句子

1. I am shopping at the mall. (改为一般疑问句)

\_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ at the mall?

2. Tina is eating lunch at the mall. (对画线部分提问)

\_\_\_\_\_ eating lunch at the mall?

3. The boy students are swimming at the pool. (对画线部分提问)

\_\_\_\_\_ the boy students \_\_\_\_\_ at the pool?

4. Mary is reading at the library. (对画线部分提问)

\_\_\_\_\_ Mary \_\_\_\_\_?

5. We are playing basketball. (对画线部分提问)

\_\_\_\_\_ are you \_\_\_\_\_?

### 二、用所给词的适当形式填空

1. I \_\_\_\_\_ (do) my homework at home now.

2. Mike is \_\_\_\_\_ (use) the computer now

3. Listen! The birds \_\_\_\_\_ (sing) in the sky.

4. He \_\_\_\_\_ (read) an interesting book at the moment.

5. I am \_\_\_\_\_ (work) as a waiter in a restaurant this month
6. —What's Mike \_\_\_\_\_ (do)? —He's watching TV
7. Tom can't \_\_\_\_\_ (play) the violin.
8. —\_\_\_\_\_ your father \_\_\_\_\_ (run) every morning? —Yes, he  
\_\_\_\_\_ (run) now.
9. She \_\_\_\_\_ (watch) TV on the sofa now.
10. Look at the \_\_\_\_\_ (child). How happy they are!

### 三、单项选择

1. What is Kate doing? \_\_\_\_\_  
A. She is in the room.    B. Yes, she is    C. She is reading    D. She is run
2. Look! What is Tom doing? He's \_\_\_\_\_ TV.  
A. seeing    B. looking    C. looking at    D. watching
3. \_\_\_\_\_ are they playing football?  
A. What    B. Who    C. Which    D. Where
4. —Is he writing or reading?  
—\_\_\_\_\_.  
A. Yes, he is    B. No, he isn't  
C. He's reading    D. Yes, he is writing.
5. We \_\_\_\_\_ to the radio.  
A. are listening    B. listening    C. is listening    D. are listenning
6. Thanks for \_\_\_\_\_ me.  
A. helps    B. is helping    C. helping    D. help
7. We are doing \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. our homework    B. our homeworks    C. her homework    D. his homework
8. Here \_\_\_\_\_ a photo of my family. You can see me in it.  
A. are    B. is    C. am    D. be
9. \_\_\_\_\_ the first photo, I \_\_\_\_\_ at the mall.  
A. On; shop    B. On; shopping  
C. In; am shopping    D. In; am shopping
10. Do you want \_\_\_\_\_ to the movies with us this evening?  
A. go    B. to go    C. goes    D. going
11. Look, Nancy \_\_\_\_\_ a letter to her parents.  
A. writing    B. is writing    C. is writeing    D. writes
12. Listen! Who \_\_\_\_\_? —Emma is.  
A. singing    B. is singing    C. sing    D. are singing
13. —Where is Mike?  
—He's \_\_\_\_\_ the river.  
A. swim in    B. swimming in    C. swiming in    D. swims

14. It's six o'clock. The Green family \_\_\_\_\_ dinner.  
A. is eating                      B. are eating                      C. are eating                      D. eats
15. Jimmy likes \_\_\_\_\_ soccer. Look! He is \_\_\_\_\_ soccer.  
A. playing; playing              B. play; play                      C. plays; plays                      D. playing; plays
16. That sounds very \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. nice                              B. good                              C. well                              D. both A and B
17. This is a photo \_\_\_\_\_ my family.  
A. of                                  B. on                                  C. in                                  D. 's
18. What about \_\_\_\_\_ football after school? —Sounds good.  
A. play                              B. playing                              C. played                              D. plays
19. Kate has many \_\_\_\_\_, and she likes \_\_\_\_\_ very much.  
A. pictures; them                  B. picture; them                  C. pictures; it                      D. picture; it
20. Thank you for \_\_\_\_\_ me a letter.  
A. write                              B. to write                              C. is writing                              D. writing
21. Please be quiet, my grandfather \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. sleep                              B. sleeps                              C. is sleeping                              D. are sleeping
22. In \_\_\_\_\_ photo, a boy is playing soccer.  
A. two                                  B. second                                  C. the two                                  D. the second
23. Look! Mary and her brother \_\_\_\_\_ there.  
A. are talking over                      B. is talking over  
C. are talking to                              D. are talking about
24. I \_\_\_\_\_ my room every day. But now I \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. clean, am reading                      B. am cleaning, reading  
C. cleaning, read                              D. clean, read
25. This TV show is \_\_\_\_\_. I don't like it.  
A. interesting                      B. fun                                  C. great                                  D. boring
26. Jim doesn't live with his family, so he \_\_\_\_\_ them very much.  
A. remembers                      B. gets                                  C. misses                                  D. leaves
27. We \_\_\_\_\_ any Chinese classes on Thursdays. And we \_\_\_\_\_ an English class now.  
A. aren't having, are having                      B. don't have, have  
C. don't have, are having                      D. aren't having, don't have
28. —Let's go to the park, Lily.  
—\_\_\_\_\_. Shall we go now?  
A. Sorry, I can't                      B. Sure                                  C. It's boring                                  D. Thanks
29. —Ling Ming, are you listening or writing?  
—\_\_\_\_\_.  
A. Yes, I am                                  B. I'm listening  
C. No, I am not writing                                  D. I'm listening and writing

30. —What are you doing?

—\_\_\_\_\_. It is too dirty.

A. I'm doing my homework

B. I'm playing computer games

C. I'm cleaning the room

D. I'm writing

#### 四、完形填空

It's a fine Sunday morning. There 1 many children in the park. They are 2 happily. Some are playing 3 under a big tree. Some girls are singing and 4. Some boys 5 running up the hill. Li Lei's 6 by the lake. He's reading a story. 7 is Wang Lin? He's standing over there. 8 is he doing? He's looking 9 a nice butterfly (蝴蝶). He 10 to catch it.

1. A. is

B. are

C. am

2. A. playing

B. sing

C. dance

3. A. the tennis

B. the football

C. games

4. A. danceing

B. to dance

C. dancing

5. A. are

B. is

C. am

6. A. sitting

B. sit

C. siting

7. A. What

B. Who

C. Where

8. A. Where

B. What

C. Who

9. A. down

B. after

C. for

10. A. want

B. is wanting

C. wants

#### 五、阅读理解

(A)

It is six forty in the morning. The children are coming into the classroom. A girl is opening the windows. Some are laughing and talking. Some are listening to them. Some are reading books. Some are doing their homework.

Miss Lin is standing behind the teacher's desk. She is writing on the blackboard. Sue and Anna are wearing their new dresses today. Ann is cleaning her desk. Mike is helping her. They all look happy.

What are Bill and Bob doing? Oh, dear! They are still playing basketball.

1. The children are \_\_\_\_\_.

A. in the school

B. at home

C. in a boat

D. on the hill.

2. What are the children NOT doing?

A. Doing their homework

B. Writing on the blackboard

C. Laughing or talking

D. Reading books.

3. The teacher is \_\_\_\_\_.

A. Miss Gao

B. Miss Lin

C. Sue

D. Four

4. How many students are not in the classroom? \_\_\_\_\_

A. One

B. Two

C. Three

D.. Four

5. Which is Not right? \_\_\_\_\_

A. Ann is cleaning the blackboard.

B. Mike is helping Ann clean her desk.

C. Bill and Bob are still playing basketball.

D. The students all look happy.

(B)

Look at the picture. Where are the children now? They are in the zoo (动物园). They are looking at the monkeys (猴子). The monkeys are in a large cage. Are the monkeys walking or jumping? They are jumping up and down in the cage. But one monkey is not jumping. It's sleeping. It is ill. Where are the children now? The children are standing next to a small cage. What's in the small cage? There is a fox (狐狸). What is the fox doing? The fox is walking in the cage. It's looking for something to eat. It wants to go out of the cage to play and walk.

Now the children are looking at the wolf (狼). Is the wolf sleeping? No, it isn't. It is not sleeping at all. The wolf is eating. What is the wolf eating? It is eating meat. There is a bone in its mouth.

判断正误, 对的打 T, 错的打 F。

1. The children are in the zoo.

2. All the monkeys are jumping

3. The ill monkey lives in a small cage.

4. The fox is looking for the meat.

5. The fox wants to go out of the cage to play and walk, but it can't

## 六、书面表达

### 1. 句子翻译

(1) 我正在看电视。

\_\_\_\_\_.

(2) 他们正在打电话。

\_\_\_\_\_.

(3) Tom 正在做家庭作业吗? 不, 他在写信。

\_\_\_\_\_.

(4) 你妈妈正在等谁?

\_\_\_\_\_.

(5) 我爷爷在看报纸。

\_\_\_\_\_.

### 2. 短文写作

今天是周日, 李磊一家都在家中。请根据下面表格内的提示, 以 What are the family doing? 为题, 写一篇 50 词左右的短文, 描述一下李磊一家人的活动, 可适当发挥。

家庭成员	活动
李磊	做作业
李晶晶（妹妹）	玩玩具
父亲	洗车
母亲	打扫房间
祖父母	看电视

\*成篇：

What are the family doing?

It's Sunday today. Li Lei and his family are all at home. Li Lei is doing his homework. His young sister, Lijingjing is playing with toys. His father is washing his car. His mother is cleaning the rooms. What are his grandparents doing? Well, they are watching TV. What a happy family!

## ►►►► Unit 7 It's raining

### \*知识清单

语言聚焦	单词	rain v. 下雨      snow v. 下雪      windy <i>adj.</i> 有风的;多风的      cloudy <i>adj.</i> 多云的; 阴天的 sunny <i>adj.</i> 晴朗的      hot <i>adj.</i> 炎热的; 热的      cold <i>adj.</i> 寒冷的; 冷的      cool <i>adj.</i> 凉爽的 warm <i>adj.</i> 温暖的; 暖和的      dry <i>adj.</i> 干燥的      bad <i>adj.</i> 坏的      weather <i>n.</i> 天气 cook v. 烹调; 煮      vacation <i>n.</i> 假期; 休假      back <i>adv.</i> 回来      problem <i>n.</i> 难题 again <i>adv.</i> 再一次      summer <i>n.</i> 夏天      mountain <i>n.</i> 高山      country <i>n.</i> 国家 Europe <i>n.</i> 欧洲      skate v. 滑冰      Canada <i>n.</i> 加拿大      Russian <i>adj.</i> 俄罗斯的; 俄罗斯人; 俄语
	短语	By the pool 在水池边      study hard 努力学习      have fun 玩得高兴 on(a)vacation 度假      write to sb. 给某人写信      (be) right for 适合于
	句型	1.How's the weather? 天气怎么样? 2. It's cloudy. / It's sunny. / It's raining. 天气多云。 / 天气晴朗。 / 天正下雨。 3.I'm so happy to see them again.很高兴再次见到他们。 4.How's your summer vacation going?你的暑假过得如何? 5.I want to call you but my phone isn't working.我想给你打电话, 但手机坏了。 6. I'm having a great time visiting my aunt in Canada. 我正在加拿大愉快地拜访我的姨妈。
语法	如何描述天气	



## \*语法精讲

## 1. 询问天气的常用句型:

(1) How's the weather?

(2) What's the weather like?

描述天气可以用 It's + 描述天气的形容词。也可以用现在进行时的句子描述天气状况。

(1) —How's the weather in Hainan? 海南的天气怎样?

—It's hot. 很热

(2) —How's the weather there? 那的天气怎样?

—It's snowing. 正在下雪。

## 2. 描述天气的形容词的构成

不少表示天气的名词后面加-y 可以变成形容词。如

wind 风→windy 多风的; rain 雨→rainy 下雨的; cloud 云→cloudy 多云的; sun 太阳→sunny 晴朗的; snow 雪→snowy 下雪的; fog 雾→foggy 多雾的。

## \*知识辨析

辨析 1: 1. —How's it going? —你近来怎样?

—Great! —很好!

## 【归纳】

(1) How's it going? 是常用的问候语, 意为“情况怎样? /进展如何? /你近况如何? ”。也可以说 How is everything going? /How are things? /How are you doing?

(2) 常用答语有: Great! 好极了 /Pretty good. 相当好 /Not bad. 不错/Terrible! 糟透了 /Just so-so! 一般般等。

## 拓展延伸:

How is/are...? 句型可用来询问对方的假期、旅游等方面的情况。

—How's your summer vacation? 你暑假过得怎样?

—Wonderful! 棒极了!

## 【活用】

—Hi, Mike! How's it going?

—\_\_\_\_\_

A. Good idea

B. I think so

C. Not bad

D. Of course

辨析 2: on vacation 在度假; 在假期中

There are many people here on vacation.

有很多人在这儿度假。

知识拓展: 介词 on 常用来表示活动、目的或状态, 如 on vacation(holiday)/on a trip/on sale 在度假/在旅行/降价出售。

【活用】

My father is going \_\_\_\_\_ a trip to Beijing.

A. in

B. for

C. at

D. on

辨析 3: cold *adj.* 寒冷的 *n.* 感冒

It's cold in winter here. 这儿的冬天很冷。

The baby often has a cold. 这个小孩经常感冒。

【归纳】

(1) cold 作为形容词，意为“寒冷的；冷的”。

(2) cold 作为名词，意为“伤风，感冒”。常用短语：have a cold 或 catch a cold 感冒。

辨析：cold 与 cool 的不同

(1) cold 作形容词，意为“寒冷的”，其反义词为 hot(热的)；cool 作为形容词，意为“凉爽的”，其反义词为 warm(温暖的)。

(2) cool 作为流行语意为“酷的”。

【活用】

(1) 夏季长白山很凉爽。

It's very \_\_\_\_\_ in summer in Mount Changbai.

(2) 冬天我常感冒。

I often \_\_\_\_\_ in winter.

辨析 4: ask sb.(not) to do sth. 要求某人(不)做某事。

He asks me not to use his computer. 他让我不要用他的电脑。

知识拓展：

(1) ask sb. for sth. 向某人要某物。

Why don't you ask your mother for some money? 你为什么 not 向你妈妈要些钱？

(2) ask for. 请求(给予)……(其后接名词或代词作宾语)。

Jim is asking for a job. 吉姆正在求职。

【活用】

(1) Jim asks his friend \_\_\_\_\_ (take) a message for him.

(2) My mother asks me \_\_\_\_\_ (not drink) cola every day.

辨析 5: have a great time 过得很愉快

I'm having a great time visiting my aunt in Canada.

我在加拿大看望我姑姑，过得很愉快。

【归纳】

have a great/good time (in) doing sth. 表示“愉快地做某事”。相当于 have fun (**in**) doing. 或 enjoy oneself (in) doing sth.

**【拓展】“玩得开心”的不同表达**

have fun: We have great fun today.

我们今天玩得很开心。

have a good time: The Greens have a good time in the park.

格林一家在公园玩得很开心。

enjoy oneself: Do you enjoy yourself during the trip?

你旅行开心吗?

**【活用】**

(1) The boys are having a great time \_\_\_\_\_ (play) games.

(2) I have fun today. (改为同义词)

I \_\_\_\_\_ today.

**☆ 达标检测****一、完成句子**

1. 杭州的天气怎么样?

\_\_\_\_\_ in Hangzhou?

2. 你妈妈近来情况怎么样?

\_\_\_\_\_ with your mother?

3. 天正在下雪。

It \_\_\_\_\_ now.

4. 没有人喜欢坏天气。

Nobody likes \_\_\_\_\_.

5. 请给我捎个口信。

Please \_\_\_\_\_ a \_\_\_\_\_ for me.

**二、用所给词的适当形式填空**

1. What a \_\_\_\_\_ (sun) day today!

2. —How is the weather?

—It's \_\_\_\_\_ (cloud).

3. Look, it is \_\_\_\_\_ (rain).

4. Spring is \_\_\_\_\_ (wind) in Beijing.

5. —What are you doing?

—I'm \_\_\_\_\_ (study) English.

6. Look! Tom \_\_\_\_\_ (play) ping pong with his friends.

7. My father usually \_\_\_\_\_ (watch) TV on weekends, but now he \_\_\_\_\_ (read) at home.

8. It's a beautiful \_\_\_\_\_ (sun) day.

9. Let's \_\_\_\_\_ (sit) by the pool.  
10. I happy \_\_\_\_\_ (see) my friend again.

### 三、单项选择

1. —Where is Mr. Smith?  
—He is in Beijing. You can call him \_\_\_\_\_ 1384232813.  
A. in                      B. at                      C. on                      D. about
2. —How's it \_\_\_\_\_?  
—Terrible.  
A. go                      B. to go                      C. goes                      D. going
3. Thank you for \_\_\_\_\_ me the good news.  
A. tell                      B. tells                      C. telling                      D. to tell
4. —\_\_\_\_\_ is the weather like \_\_\_\_\_ London?  
—It's very warm.  
A. What; about              B. What; in              C. How; about              D. How; in
5. \_\_\_\_\_ everyone \_\_\_\_\_ basketball in your class ?  
A. Does; plays              B. Do; play              C. Do; plays              D. Does; play
6. Here \_\_\_\_\_ some interesting TV shows for you to watch.  
A. is                      B. are                      C. has                      D. have
7. —Is your sister doing her homework now, Jack?  
—Yes, \_\_\_\_\_  
A. she is                      B. she' s                      C. she can                      D. she does
8. Does your brother enjoy \_\_\_\_\_?  
A. talking people              B. talking to people  
C. to talk people              D. talks to people
9. If you are good with kids, please come and work \_\_\_\_\_ us \_\_\_\_\_ a teacher.  
A. to; for                      B. for; to                      C. for; as                      D. as; for
10. Look! They \_\_\_\_\_ beach volleyball on the beach.  
A. playing                      B. are playing                      C. plays                      D. play
11. Look at the \_\_\_\_\_. It' s \_\_\_\_\_ heavily now.  
A. rain; rain                      B. raining; raining  
C. rain; raining                      D. raining; rain
12. I can' t go to the park \_\_\_\_\_ it' s snowing heavily.  
A. and                      B. because                      C. but                      D. /
13. Tom is sitting \_\_\_\_\_ the lake and drawing picture.  
A. in                      B. on                      C. by                      D. under
14. —What are your parents doing?  
— \_\_\_\_\_  
A. They are doctors                      B. They like walking

- C. They talk to each other                      D. They are taking photos
15. —Let's go to see animals in the zoo this Sunday.  
—\_\_\_\_\_, I like animals.  
A. I am sorry              B. No, thanks              C. That sounds great              D. You are welcome
16. —How's the \_\_\_\_ in Wuhan now?  
—It's very hot.  
A. room                      B. city                      C. weather                      D. place
17. Many kids like Jay Chou because he looks very \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. cool                      B. terrible                      C. boring                      D. bad
18. —\_\_\_\_\_ is it going in America?  
—Not bad. My English is much better now.  
A. How                      B. What                      C. Why                      D. Where
19. —What are you doing in your room?  
—I am \_\_\_\_\_. The soap opera is too fun.  
A. playing computer game                      B. watching TV  
C. listening to music                      D. sleeping
20. —Happy New Year.  
—\_\_\_\_\_.  
A. Thank you              B. Happy New Year              C. Not bad                      D. It's terrible
21. —Where are you these years?  
—I am studying \_\_\_\_\_ Australia.  
A. at                      B. in                      C. with                      D. from
22. She likes to \_\_\_\_\_ sports clothes when she goes to work.  
A. play                      B. wear                      C. buy                      D. enjoy
23. It's very hot in Guangzhou, but it's still very \_\_\_\_\_ in Harbin now.  
A. hot                      B. humid-                      C. cold                      D. warm
24. —Hello, is that Tom speaking?  
—Yes, \_\_\_\_\_ Tom.  
A. I'm                      B. I am                      C. it is                      D. this is
25. —How is it going?  
—\_\_\_\_\_.  
A. How are you?              B. Not bad.                      C. Thank you.                      D. It's cloudy.
26. The weather is very \_\_\_\_\_ in Tibet sometimes.  
A. terrible                      B. well                      C. pretty                      D. terribly
27. It's too \_\_\_\_\_. Why not open the window?  
A. cold                      B. cool                      C. warm                      D. hot
28. Wow, you are very \_\_\_\_\_ in red.  
A. cold                      B. cool                      C. warm                      D. hot
29. —How's it going \_\_\_\_\_ you?

—Not bad.

A. to

B. with

C. on

D. about

30. There are many people \_\_\_\_\_ vacation in Europe every year.

A. at

B. for

C. on

D. in

#### 四、完形填空

Jenny is a student in Hangzhou now. She moves (搬家) to this 1 with her family, 2 Hangzhou is a beautiful place and they like it very much. They are very pleased with their 3 in Hangzhou. The city is beautiful and clean. The people are kind and 4 to them. Now Jenny's parents work 5 a bank and Jenny 6 at a great middle school. Everything is going 7. But there is a big problem. They don't like the 8 in Hangzhou. Jenny said, "It's too hot in summer while too cold in winter. On hot days, I have to stay at home. When it's very cold, it often 9. I can't go out to play, either (也). That's really 10 .

1. A. city

B. country

C. school

D. capital

2. A. but

B. because

C. so

D. or

3. A. work

B. life

C. study

D. sports

4. A. sad

B. surprised

C. relaxed

D. friendly

5. A. on

B. in

C. under

D. to

6. A. stays

B. studies

C. works

D. swims

7. A. good

B. best

C. well

D. beautiful

8. A. people

B. hospital

C. food

D. weather

9. A. rain

B. rainy

C. is raining

D. rains

10. A. great

B. scary

C. terrible

D. exciting

#### 五、阅读理解

(A)

Today is Sunday. It is sunny. Kate and her friends go to the beach.

There are lots of people here now. Some are playing volleyball. Others are swimming in the sea. Look at this group of people singing and taking a sunbath (日光浴) on the beach.

After swimming for some time, Kate feels very tired. So she has a rest at the swimming club on the beach.

Where are Kate's best friends? Susan is learning to swim in the water. Gina is helping her to learn swimming. Susan is clever. I think she can swim soon.

根据短文内容，选择最佳答案。

1. Kate and Susan are \_\_\_\_\_ on Sunday.

A. on the beach

B. at home

C. in the school

D. in the park

2. There are some people on the beach. Some are \_\_\_\_\_. Others are \_\_\_\_\_.

A. playing basketball; singing

B. playing volleyball; swimming

C. staging; dancing

D. taking photos; singing

3. Kate has a rest because she feels \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. happy                      B. cold                      C. tired                      D. sad
4. Which isn't mentioned (被提到) in the article?  
 A. Some people are playing volleyball.      B. Some people are taking photos.  
 C. Some people are swimming.              D. Some people are taking a sunbath.
5. The fourth paragraph (段落) tells us \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. something about the swimming club      B. what people are doing  
 C. an interesting story                      D. Gina is helping Susan to learn to swim

## (B)

My name is Jack. Here are four of my favorite photos. Let me tell you something about them.

In the first photo, I'm running. I like sports and I want to be a running star. I like spring and winter best. So I have two photos of them. Look at the second photo. I am flying kites (风筝) with my friends in the park. There are all kinds of kites there. We are very happy. In the third photo, I'm playing snow fight (打仗) with my friends. And some friends are making snowmen. We are playing happily. In the last photo. I'm doing my homework. Who's that girl? Oh. she is my sister and she is helping me with my homework. My sister is good at her subjects. In the evening, we usually do our homework and watch TV.

根据短文内容，选择最佳答案。

6. Jack wants to be \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. a reporter                      B. a snowman                      C. a worker                      D. a running star
7. The \_\_\_\_\_ photo is about winter.  
 A. first                      B. second                      C. third                      D. last
8. In winter people can \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. fly kites                      B. play with snow                      C. swim                      D. watch TV
9. \_\_\_\_\_ help(s) him with his homework.  
 A. Jack's friends                      B. Jack                      C. Jack's sister                      D. Jack's parents
10. Which of the following isn't right?  
 A. Jack is good at his subjects.  
 B. Jack likes sports.  
 C. In spring, Jack and his friends can fly kites.  
 D. In the evening, Jack and his sister do their homework and watch TV.

## 六、书面表达

## 1. 句子翻译

(1) 每个人都过得很愉快。

(2) 那里正在下雨吗?

(3) 这儿有许多人在度假。

(4) 有些人在打篮球，另一些人在跑步。

(5) 请叫他早点到这儿。

## 2. 短文写作

假如你们学校周日在大明湖搞了一次校游，天气很好，同学们都玩得很高兴。有的在唱歌，有的在跳舞，有的在拍照，还有有的在作画……请适当发挥想像，描述一下这次校游的场面。词数 50 词以上。

成篇：

Today is Sunday, and it's a beautiful, sunny day. We're on a school trip in the Daming Lake. All the students are having a good time. Some are singing under a tall tree, some are dancing, some are taking photos, and others are drawing pictures. Look, a group of boy students are playing soccer on the grass.

I think this is a good place to have fun. The students are really very relaxed.

## ►►►► Unit 8 Is there a post office near here?

### \*知识清单

语言聚焦	单词	hotel <i>n.</i> 旅馆 restaurant <i>n.</i> 餐厅 bank <i>n.</i> 银行 street <i>n.</i> 大街 pay <i>v. &amp; n.</i> 付费 near <i>prep.</i> 在……附近 across <i>adv. &amp; prep.</i> 穿过 front <i>n.</i> 前面 behind <i>prep.</i> 在……后面 town <i>n.</i> 市镇 around <i>prep.</i> 在周围 north <i>n.</i> 北方 crossing <i>n.</i> 十字路口 neighborhood <i>n.</i> 街区 spend <i>v.</i> 花（时间、钱等） climb <i>v.</i> 爬 road <i>n.</i> 路 right <i>adv. &amp; n.</i> 向右边；右边 left <i>adv. &amp; n.</i> 向左边；左边 often <i>adv.</i> 经常 air <i>n.</i> 空气 sunshine <i>n.</i> 阳光 free <i>adj.</i> 免费的 enjoy <i>v.</i> 享受；喜爱 money <i>n.</i> 钱
	短语	near here 附近 across from 在……对面 next to 挨着，靠近 between... and... 在……和……之间 in front of 在……前面 excuse me 劳驾 far from 离……远 go along... 沿着……走 turn right / left 向右 / 左转 on the(或 one's) right / left 在（某人的）右边 / 左边 enjoy reading 喜欢阅读 be good at 擅长 watch sb. doing sth. 看见某人正在做某事 go down 沿着……走
	句型	1. —Is there a hospital near here? 这附近有医院吗？ —Yes, there is. It's on Bridge Street. 是的，有。它在桥街上。 2. There is a post office between my house and a clothes store. 在我家和服装店之间有一个邮局。 3. Go along long Street and it's on the right. 沿着长街走，它在右边。 4. Turn right at the first crossing. 在第一个十字路口向右转。 5. There is a park across from the supermarket. 超市对面有一个公园。
语法	there be 句型	



## \*语法精讲

## there be 句型

1. 含义: there be 句型表示“某处有(存在)某人或某物”。

2. 结构: There be + 某物/某人 + 某地(其中 there 是引导词, 没有词义; be 是谓语动词; “某物/某人”是主语; “某地”在句中作状语, 多为介词短语)。

如: There is a park near here. 这附近有一座公园。

There are many people on the street. 大街上有许多人。

3. 句式变化:

(1) 肯定句: There be + 名词 + 地点。

(2) 否定句: There be + not + 名词 + 地点状语;

(3) 一般疑问句: Be + there + 名词 + 地点状语?

答语仍要用 there, 如一般现在时的两种回答: Yes, there is/are. /No, there isn't/aren't.

(4) 特殊疑问句:

特殊疑问词 + be + there + „?

如: There is a bird in the tree.

→ There isn't a bird in the tree.

→ Is there a bird in the tree?

→ Yes, there is./No, there isn't.

→ What is in the tree?

4. be 的形式

There be 句型中 be 动词的形式要和其后的主语在人称和数上保持一致。

如: There is a basketball in the box. 盒子里有一个篮球。

There are many books on the desk. 桌子上有许多书。

如果有两个或两个以上并列主语, be 动词要和最靠近它的那个主语在数上保持一致, 即遵循“就近原则”。

如: There is an orange and some bananas in the basket. 篮子里有一个橙子和几个香蕉。

There are some bananas and an orange in the basket. 篮子里有几个香蕉和一个橙子。

## 【拓展】

(1) there be 的特殊疑问句: “How many+名词+be there+介词短语?”

(2) there be 句型的肯定句变疑问句或否定句时, 若句中有 some, 要将 some 变为 any。

\*—How many students are here in your class? 你们班有多少名学生?

—Forty. 有 40 名。

\* There are some pears on the table. 在桌子上有一些梨。

\* There aren't any pears on the table. 桌子上没有梨。

辨异：there be 句型和 have/has 的区别 there be 句型表示“存在，有”；have/has 表示“拥有，所有”，两者不能同时使用。

如：There are three books on the desk. 桌子上有三本书。

I have three books. 我有三本书

### 【活用】

用 be 动词的适当形式填空

1. There \_\_\_\_\_ a beautiful garden near here.
2. There \_\_\_\_\_ some juice in the glass.
3. There \_\_\_\_\_ some fruit stores on the street.
4. There \_\_\_\_\_ a supermarket and three banks in this neighborhood.
5. There \_\_\_\_\_ some books and a dictionary on the desk.

## \*知识辨析

辨析 1: across *adv. & prep.* 过；穿过

The pay phone is across from the library. 付费电话在图书馆的对面。

### 【归纳】across 的用法

across 作为介词或副词，意为“过；穿过”，指“从……的一边到另一边，横过”。

across from 表示“在……对面”，相当于 on the other side of/ opposite。

### 【辨异】：across 与 through

Across	介词“横过；从一边到另一边”，其含义与 on 有关，指从物体表面的一边到另一边，如：横过马路、操场、沙漠等。
through	介词“穿过；从一边到另一边”，其含义与 in 有关，指从物体内部、之间穿过，如：穿过隧道、森林、浓雾等。

### 【拓展】

(1) cross 是动词，意为“穿过”相当于 go /walk across; crossing 为名词，意为“十字路口”。

Be careful when you cross the road.

(2) over 是介词，译为“横过，越过”，表示从物体的上空越过，跨过如：

There is a bridge over the river.

### 【活用】

(1) 在超市的对面有一家医院。

There is a hospital \_\_\_\_\_ the supermarket.

(2) 他想游过那条河。

He wants to \_\_\_\_\_ the river.

**辨析 2: in front of 在……前面**

The pay phone is in front of the library. 投币式公用电话在图书馆前面。

**【辨异】in front of 与 in the front of 区别**

in front of 意为“在……（外部的）前面”；

in the front of 意为“在……（内部的）前面”。

**【活用】**

① 老师站在同学们的前面。

The teacher stands \_\_\_\_\_ the class.

② 老师站在教室的前面。

The teacher stands \_\_\_\_\_ the classroom.

**辨析 3: turn 转向；翻**

Turn right at the first crossing. 在第一个路口向右转。

Please turn to Page 11. 请翻到第 11 页。

**【归纳】**

(1) turn 作为动词，意为“转向；翻”，turn right/left 意为“\_\_\_\_\_”。

(2) turn 作名词，意为“次序”，It's one's turn to do sth. 意为“轮到某人做某事了”。

(3) turn 还可以用作系动词，意为“变得”。

Trees turn green when spring comes. 春天到了，树变绿了。

**【活用】**

(1) \_\_\_\_\_ right, and you'll find it on your left.

(2) His face \_\_\_\_\_ (变成红色) at the words.

**辨析 4: spend 花（时间、钱等）**

I like to spend time there on weekends.

**【辨异】spend / pay / take / cost 辨析**

(1) spend 只能人做主语，并且后面的介词是 on sth 或者(in) doing sth。

(2) pay 的主语也是人，sb. pay(s) some money for sth. 某人为某物付款。

(3) take 的主语是 it It takes sb. some time to do sth. 做某事花费某人多长时间。

(4) cost 的主语是物，sth. cost(s) sb. some money. 某物花费某人多少钱。

\* I paid 20 yuan for this book. 这本书我花了 2 元钱。

\* It takes me 3 hours to go home. 我花了 3 小时到家。

\* This T-shirt costs me 119 yuan. 这件 T 恤花了我 119 元钱。

**【活用】**

(1) She spends two days on this book. (改为同义句)

She \_\_\_\_\_ two days \_\_\_\_\_ this book.

(2) It takes me two hours \_\_\_\_\_ (play) basketball every day.

**辨析 5:** watching...doing...观看……在做……

I love to watch the monkeys climbing around. 我喜欢看猴子们到处爬。

### 【归纳】

watch 作动词，意为“看；观看”，其后即可以接动词-ing 形式也可以接动词原形做宾语补足语。

**【辨异】:** watching sb. doing sth 与 watching sb. do sth.

watching sb. doing sth: 观看某人正在做某事（强调所做的事正在进行）

watching sb. do sth: 观看某人做某事（所做的事为经常发生或已做过的事情）

I watch Wang Ming singing when I passed the classroom.

当我经过教室的时候，我看见王明正在唱歌。

Many people like to watch others play sports.

许多人喜欢观看其他人进行体育比赛。

### 【活用】

(1) The boy is watching a cat \_\_\_\_\_ (climb) a tall tree.

(2) I like to watch others \_\_\_\_\_ (play) soccer.

(3) When I passed the school, I watch a girl \_\_\_\_\_ (dance).

## ☆ 达标检测

### 一、完成句子

1. 沿着第五大街走，然后左转。

Go \_\_\_\_\_ Fifth Street, then \_\_\_\_\_.

2. 我家在一条喧闹的大街上。

My house is \_\_\_\_\_ a noisy \_\_\_\_\_.

3. 从机场坐出租车，沿着公路走，直到看到一个图书馆在你的右边。

\_\_\_\_\_ from the airport and \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_ the road until you see a library \_\_\_\_\_

4. 这儿附近有图书馆吗？

\_\_\_\_\_ there a \_\_\_\_\_ here?

5. 请在第一个十字路口处向右拐。

Please \_\_\_\_\_ at the first \_\_\_\_\_.

### 二、用所给词的适当形式填空

1. The children enjoy \_\_\_\_\_ (play) soccer after class.

2. She \_\_\_\_\_ (go) home at five every afternoon.

3. I spend much time \_\_\_\_\_ (speak) English every morning.
4. I can find the hotel \_\_\_\_\_ (easy).
5. You should turn right at the second \_\_\_\_\_ (cross).
6. The girls enjoy \_\_\_\_\_ (see) comedies.
7. I love to watch monkeys \_\_\_\_\_ (climb) trees.
8. There \_\_\_\_\_ (be) a pen and two pencils in the box.
9. It takes me two hours \_\_\_\_\_ (play) basketball every day.
10. Mike spends much money \_\_\_\_\_ (buy) the car.

### 三、单项选择

1. My best friend sits next \_\_\_\_\_ me.  
A. in                      B. on                      C. to                      D. behind
2. Go \_\_\_\_\_ the bridge, and you can see a big park.  
A. across                      B. through                      C. cross                      D. across from
3. In England traffic (车辆) goes \_\_\_\_\_ the road.  
A. in the middle of      B. on the right of      C. on the left of      D. on the front of
4. The supermarket is \_\_\_\_\_ Fifth Avenue.  
A. on                      B. through                      C. between                      D. /
5. The library is \_\_\_\_\_ the restaurant and the supermarket.  
A. next                      B. near                      C. between                      D. across
6. —Where are you \_\_\_\_\_?  
—Beijing.  
A. on                      B. from                      C. come                      D. come from
7. Is \_\_\_\_\_ a pay phone in the neighborhood?  
A. this                      B. there                      C. that                      D. the
8. —\_\_\_\_\_ can I get to the post office?  
—Go down this road and turn left.  
A. Where                      B. What                      C. How                      D. When
9. —Is there a supermarket?  
—No, \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. this is not                      B. there isn't                      C. it isn't                      D. there aren't
10. I want to borrow some books. Is there a \_\_\_\_\_ around here?  
A. pay phone                      B. library                      C. bank                      D. restaurant
11. This is a nice city \_\_\_\_\_ many interesting places.  
A. of                      B. with                      C. on                      D. and
12. Bridge Street is a good place \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. have fun                      B. to have fun                      C. having fun                      D. to fun
13. —Is there a pay phone \_\_\_\_\_ the neighborhood?  
—Yes, it's \_\_\_\_\_ Center Street \_\_\_\_\_ the right.

- A. in, down, on      B. on, on, is      C. in, on, is      D. on, down, on
14. Can you tell me the way \_\_\_\_\_ the post office?  
A. to      B. on      C. at      D. of
15. You can get money in the \_\_\_\_\_ and you can get books in the \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. post office, bank      B. bank, garden      C. bank, library      D. library, bank
16. How can he \_\_\_\_\_ the new school?  
A. gets to      B. get to      C. arrive      D. arrive to
17. I hope I can have a big house \_\_\_\_\_ a beautiful garden.  
A. in      B. for      C. at      D. with
18. Jim often arrives \_\_\_\_\_ school at 8:00.  
A. in      B. at      C. to      D. of
19. My house is \_\_\_\_\_ the shop.  
A. to      B. through      C. across from      D. pass
20. There \_\_\_\_\_ a pen and two pencils in the pencil case.  
A. is      B. are      C. be      D. have
21. Look! Your father is \_\_\_\_\_ two men.  
A. among      B. in      C. between      D. of
22. Liu Mei is short. So she sits \_\_\_\_\_ the class.  
A. in front of      B. in the front of      C. at the back of      D. behind
23. \_\_\_\_\_. Can you tell me the way to the library?  
A. Sorry      B. Excuse      C. I'm sorry      D. Excuse me
24. —How many people are there in your \_\_\_\_\_?  
—Three, my parents and I.  
A. house      B. home      C. family      D. room
25. Go straight and turn \_\_\_\_\_. You'll see the school.  
A. to left      B. the left      C. for the left      D. left
26. Jim sits \_\_\_\_\_ my left.  
A. in      B. on      C. for      D. of
27. Children like reading books \_\_\_\_\_ pictures.  
A. with      B. for      C. of      D. at
28. There is a bridge \_\_\_\_\_ the river.  
A. cross      B. across      C. over      D. through
29. —there orange juice in the fridge?  
—I don't know.  
A. Am      B. Are      C. Is      D. Does
30. —Welcome to our garden district.  
—\_\_\_\_\_.  
A. Sure      B. Not bad      C. Not at all      D. Thank you

## 四、完形填空

Welcome to Centre Street. Centre Street is a great place to enjoy 1. There are 2 stores and shops on it. It is a very 3 street. If you want to 4 you can go to the books shops. It is 5 from the big supermarket. There's also a new park 6 the supermarket. It's 7 and quiet. You can 8 your lunch in it. If you want to see 9, you can go the movie house. It's 10 the supermarket and the park.

- |                    |               |                |              |
|--------------------|---------------|----------------|--------------|
| 1. A. yourself     | B. you        | C. your        | D. yours     |
| 2. A. lot of       | B. a lot      | C. a lot of    | D. a lots of |
| 3. A. small        | B. quiet      | C. busy        | D. dirty     |
| 4. A. have lunch   | B. play games | C. buy clothes | D. buy books |
| 5. A. across       | B. between    | C. next        | D. on        |
| 6. A. neighborhood | B. near       | C. between     | D. next      |
| 7. A. quiet        | B. clean      | C. busy        | D. dirty     |
| 8. A. buy          | B. make       | C. take        | D. enjoy     |
| 9. A. books        | B. games      | C. movies      | D. clothes   |
| 10. A. across      | B. between    | C. down        | D. through   |

## 五、阅读理解

## (A)

When you are in English, you must be very careful in the streets because the traffic (车辆) moves on the left. Before you cross a street, you must look at the right first and then left. In the morning and in the evening when people go to or come from work, the streets are very busy. Traffic is the most dangerous (危险) then. When you drive a car in England, you have to be more careful, too. Always remember the traffic moves on the left. So you must be careful. Have a look first, or you will go the wrong way. In many English cities, there are big buses with two floors. You can sit on the second floor. From there you can see the city well. It is very interesting.

- In England the traffic moves \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. on the right      B. on the left      C. in the middle      D. in the park
- When you cross a street, you must look at \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. the front      B. the right      C. the left      D. both B and C
- The streets become very busy in the morning and in the evening because \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. the people go to work      B. the people come from work  
C. the people go shopping      D. both A and B
- It's \_\_\_\_\_ to cross the streets in the morning and in the evening.  
A. dangerous      B. easy      C. interesting      D. safe
- You can see the city well on the \_\_\_\_\_ floor of the bus.  
A. first      B. second      C. third      D. fourth

(B)

Mr. Brown lives on Green Street now. He wants to send a postcard (寄贺卡) to his pen pal in Toronto, but he doesn't know where the post office is. "Which is the way to the post office?" he asks his new neighbor Joe. "I want to send a postcard to Toronto." "The post office is quite far from here," answers Joe. "If you only want to post some letters or postcards, you needn't go to the post office. You can put them into a mailbox down the street."

1. Where does Mr. Brown live now?
 

A. He lives on Center Street.	B. He lives in Toronto.
C. He lives on Green Street.	D. He lives in a post office.
2. Where does Mr. Brown want to go?
 

A. A pen pal's house.	B. A post office	C. A mailbox.	D. Toronto.
-----------------------	------------------	---------------	-------------
3. What does Mr. Brown want to do in the post office?
 

A. He wants to go to the mailbox.	B. He wants to buy some stamps.
C. He wants to send a postcard.	D. He wants to know the way to Toronto.
4. Where is the post office?
 

A. We don't know.	B. In Toronto.
C. On Green Street.	D. In the neighborhood.
5. Where can Mr. Brown post the postcard in the neighborhood?
 

A. The post office.	B. The mailbox in the post office.
C. His house.	D. The mailbox on the street.

## 六、书面表达

### 1. 句子翻译

(1) 沿着这条街走，然后向左转。

---

(2) 这儿附近有图书馆吗？

---

(3) 让我来告诉你如何到达飞机场。

---

(4) 超市在银行和学校之间。

---

(5) 我喜欢在公园看书。

---

### 2. 短文写作

根据下列提示，编写一段题为“问路”的对话（60~80个字）：

**Green** 太太想去博物馆，但不知如何走，于是就向一位警察询问。警察告诉她沿街走到第二个十字路口向左拐，拐角过去第三幢楼就是博物馆。

\*成篇：

Mrs. Green: Excuse me, but could you tell me the way to the museum?



Policeman: Certainly. Just go up this street and turn left at the second crossing. The third building from the corner is the museum. You can't miss it.

Mrs. Green: Oh, let me see. Go down this street, turn left at the second crossing, and the museum is the third building from the corner. Am I right?

Policeman: Yes, that's right.

Mrs. Green: Thank you very much. Bye-bye.

Policeman: You are welcome. Bye-bye.

## ►►►► Unit 9 What does he look like?

### \*知识清单

语言聚焦	单词	curly <i>adj.</i> 卷曲的    straight <i>adj.</i> 直的    height <i>n.</i> 身高; 高度 build <i>n.</i> 身材    later <i>adv.</i> 以后    each <i>adj. &amp; pron.</i> 每个; 各自 handsome <i>adj.</i> 英俊的    actor <i>n.</i> 演员    actress <i>n.</i> 女演员 way <i>n.</i> 方式; 路线    describe <i>v.</i> 描述    differently <i>adv.</i> 不同的 another <i>adj. &amp; pron.</i> 另一; 又一    real <i>adj.</i> 真正的
	短语	(be)of medium height/build 中等身高、身材    look like 看起来像 a little 有点儿    tall or short 不高不矮    wear glasses 戴眼镜 put... in the newspaper 把.... 登在报纸上    the same way 同样的方式 first of all 首先    be good at 擅长    in the end 最后
	句型	(1) What does your friend look like? 你的朋友长什么样? (2) She's of medium height and has long straight hair. 她中等身材, 有一头长长的直发。 (3) Are you going to the movies tonight? 你今晚要去看电影吗? (4) We're meeting at seven, right? 我们将在七点见面, 是吗?

### \*语法精讲

#### 描述他人的外貌

##### 一、询问他人外貌特征的常用句型

(一) What do/does + 主语 + look like? 表示“……长什么样?” 回答时可用“sb. is/are + 形容词”或“sb. have/has + 形容词 + 名词”。如:

-What do the twins look like?

-They have short hair.

“那对双胞胎长什么样?”

“他们留着一头短发”。

-What does your brother look like?

-He is really tall. He has curly hair.

“你弟弟长什么样？”

“他个子很高，留着卷发。”

拓展 1: What + be + 主语 + like, 询问某人怎样, 应从性格、人品方面回答。如:

——What's he like? 他人怎么样?

——He's outgoing and kind. 他很开朗、友善。

拓展 2: look like 意为“看起来像”, be like 像……一样, 指品德、相貌等像。Like 作动词时, 意为“喜欢。”如:

She looks like her mother. 她看起来像她的妈妈。

She likes singing and dancing. 她喜欢唱歌、跳舞。

## (二) 描述外貌的句型

1. 描述身高或体型: 主语 + be + 形容词/of 短语

She is of medium height. 她中等身材。

2. 描述头发、胡须: 主语 + have/has +

long(short)curly(straight)black(yellow/blonde/brown)hair/beard

特别提示: 当描述人的头发时, 应按“长短—曲直—颜色”的顺序。

My friend has long curly blonde hair. 我的朋友有着卷曲的金黄色的头发。

语法精练:

### 【活用】

1. Gina is tall and has \_\_\_\_\_ hair.

A. Straight short black

B. black straight short

B. short black straight

D. short straight black

2. \_\_\_\_\_ does your favorite singer look like?

A. How

B. What

C. Who

D. When

3. Jack \_\_\_\_\_ tall or short. He's \_\_\_\_\_ medium.

A. is; in

B. doesn't; of

C. isn't; of

D. doesn't; in

4. Please tell me \_\_\_\_\_.

A. what does Dale look like

B. what Dale looks like

C. what's Dale like

D. what does Dale like

## \*知识辨析

辨析 1: build n. &v. 身材; 建造 build 作名词时, 表示“体格, 体形”; 作动词时, 表示“建造”。如:

The woman is of medium build. 这个妇女中等身材。

They are building our house. 他们正在建我们的房子。

### 【活用】

用 build 的适当形式填空

① The man of medium \_\_\_\_\_ are \_\_\_\_\_ our teaching house there.

辨析 2: handsome adj. 英俊的

知识拓展: handsome, good-looking, beautiful 与 pretty 的用法区别:

(1) handsome 表示“帅气的, 英俊的”, 只修饰男性。如: a handsome young man 一位帅小伙

(2) good-looking 表示“好看的”, 修饰男女均可。如:

a good looking boy/girl 一位帅男、靓女

(1) beautiful 表示“漂亮的”, 修饰女性或物。如:

a beautiful girl/garden 一个漂亮的女孩/花园

(2) pretty 表示“漂亮的”, 指女性和孩子。如:

a pretty baby 一个漂亮的宝宝

### 【活用】

The singer is tall, \_\_\_\_\_ and has long blonde hair.

A. good

B. small

C. good-looking

D. beautiful

辨析 3: a little 一点: 少量

There is a little rain tomorrow. 明天有小雨

知识拓展: a little、little、a bit、a little bit、a bit of 的用法区别

a little = a bit = a little bit 表示肯定, 意思是“有点”, 后接形容词或副词。如:

It's a little (a bit/ a little bit) hot today.

a little = a bit of 表示肯定, 意为“有一点”, 后接不可数名词。如:

There is a little water in the bottle. 瓶子里有点水。

little 意为“几乎没有”, 表示否定的含义。

### 【活用】

#### 单项选择

① Julia is \_\_\_\_\_ short, but she doesn't care.

A. a little bit

B. little

C. a bit of

D. a little of

② There is \_\_\_\_\_ rain here in spring, so it's very dry.

A. little

B. a little

C. much

D. a bit

辨析 4: be 与 have/has

be 是系动词, 有“是”的意思, “be+形容词”强调某人是……样子的外形, 常用于描述大概的体形、身高等。

“have /has+名词”结构强调某人具有的相貌特征, 常用于描述五官、相貌等。如:

He is of medium height. 他中等身材。

He has short curly hair. 他留着短短的卷发。

【活用】

根据汉语意思完成句子。

- ① He \_\_\_\_\_ of medium height. (他中等身材)  
② He \_\_\_\_\_ short curly hair. (他留着短短的卷发)

辨析 5: glass

(1) glass 作“玻璃”讲时，为不可数名词。如：

glass breaks easily. 玻璃易碎。

(2) glass 作“玻璃杯”讲时，为可数名词。

Please have a glass of water. 请喝杯水。

He handed the glasses of beer to his father. 他把那几杯啤酒递给父亲。

(3) glass 作“眼镜”讲时，只用复数形式。如：a pair of glasses.

【活用】

I like wearing \_\_\_\_\_ in hot summer.

- A. a glass                      B. glass                      C. some glasses                      D. glasses

辨析 6: wear 有“穿着”；“戴着”的意思，强调状态，常用一般现在时表示经常性的状态。wear 还可用来表示佩戴手表、手饰以及留头发、胡须等。

知识拓展：wear 与 put on、dress 的用分区别。

Put on 有“穿上、戴上”的意思，强调动作，是终止性动词短语，不能与表示一段时间的状态连用。dress 宾语通常是人，意思是“给……穿衣服”。dress oneself 意为“给自己穿衣服”。get dressed 意为“穿好衣服。”

【活用】

- ① He always \_\_\_\_\_ black trousers and he always \_\_\_\_\_ his son in black  
A. dress; dress                      B. wears; puts on                      C. wears; dresses                      D. puts on; wears.  
② He likes \_\_\_\_\_ the red coat.  
A. wearing                      B. wears                      C. putting on                      D. dressing

辨析 7: each adj. & pron. 每个；各自

(1) each 用作副词，意为“每一个”。如：

For boys, you can buy shirts for only \$ 8 each.

(2) each 用作形容词，修饰名词时，名词要用可数名词单数形式。

Each boy has a pair of socks. 每个男孩都有一双袜子。

知识拓展：each 与 every 的用法区别

(1) every 强调全体的概念，each 强调个体概念。如：

Every student in our school works hard. 我们学校的学生都很用功。

Each student may have one book. 每个学生都可有一本书。

(2) every 指三个以上的人或物（含三个），each 指两个以上的人或物（含两个）。如：

He gave a book to each of his parents. 他给他父母各送了一本书。

(3) each 可作代词和形容词, 而 every 只能作形容词, 如可以说 each of the books, 但不能说 every of the books.

### 【活用】

- ① You can take one bag\_\_\_\_, children.  
A. every                      B. each                      C. all                      D. neither
- ② Do you think \_\_\_\_\_of the students can take part in the Skating?  
A. each                      B. every                      C. all                      D. neither

辨析 8: differently adv. 不同地

The two boys walk differently. 这两个男孩走路有些不同。

知识拓展: differently、different、difference 的用法区别:

Differently 是副词, different 是形容词, 意为“不同的、有区别的”, “be different from”意为“与……不同”; difference 是名词, 意为“不同、差异; 区别”。如:

They are from two different cities. 他们来自两个不同的城市。

Can you find the differences of these pictures? 你能找出这些画的不同点吗?

### 【活用】

- ① My sports shoes are different \_\_\_\_\_ yours.  
A. with                      B. of                      C. from                      D. in
- ② There are some \_\_\_\_\_ between the two words.  
A. different                      B. differences                      C. differently                      D. difference

## ☆达标检测

### 一、用所给词的适当形式填空

- What \_\_\_\_\_ your father \_\_\_\_\_ (look) like?
- Wang Lin \_\_\_\_\_ (not have) curly, brown hair.
- The \_\_\_\_\_ (high) of the building is about 100 meters.
- Our English teacher often wears \_\_\_\_\_ (glass)
- They describe their teacher \_\_\_\_\_ (different)
- Mr. Black is an \_\_\_\_\_ (art)
- This is a \_\_\_\_\_ (really) story.
- Please remember \_\_\_\_\_ (close) the window when you leave.
- Let me tell you what he \_\_\_\_\_ (look) like.
- He \_\_\_\_\_ (go) to the movies tomorrow.

### 二、完成句子

- 我父亲留着直发, 他真的很英俊。

My father \_\_\_\_\_ straight hair and he's really \_\_\_\_\_.

2. 他中等身材。

He's \_\_\_\_\_.

3. 辛迪不胖也不瘦。

Cindy \_\_\_\_\_ fat \_\_\_\_\_ thin.

4. 今晚他们将去看电影。

They're \_\_\_\_\_ to the movie \_\_\_\_\_.

5. 你的朋友长什么样。

\_\_\_\_\_ does your \_\_\_\_\_?

6. Mr. Wang is of medium build. (对画线部分提问)

\_\_\_\_\_ Mr. Wang \_\_\_\_\_.

7. My sister look like my father. (对画线部分提问)

\_\_\_\_\_ your sister \_\_\_\_\_ like?

8. Dave goes to the park on weekends. (用 next Sunday 改写句子)

Dave \_\_\_\_\_ to the park next Sunday.

9. Tom looks like his father. (改为否定句)

Tom \_\_\_\_\_ his father.

10. Bill has straight hair. (用 curly hair 改为选择疑问句)

\_\_\_\_\_ Bill \_\_\_\_\_ straight hair \_\_\_\_\_ curly hair?

### 三、单项选择

1. — \_\_\_\_\_?

— She has long hair.

A. Who's she ?

B. What does she do

C. What does she like ?

D. What does she look like?

2. Jim looks \_\_\_\_\_ his father. And he \_\_\_\_\_ running with his father.

A. Likes; likes

B. like; likes

C. likes; like

D. like; like

3. I \_\_\_\_\_ my mother and I \_\_\_\_\_ her.

A. am like; like

B. am like

C. like; like

D. like; am likes

4. How do you \_\_\_\_\_ China?

A. like

B. likes

C. liked

D. look like

5. The girl \_\_\_\_\_ black hair and she \_\_\_\_\_ of medium height.

A. has; has

B. is ;has

C. has; is

D. is; is

6. What are you going \_\_\_\_\_ tonight?

A. do

B. to do

C. doing

D. to doing

7. I'm tired. I am \_\_\_\_\_ bed.

A. go to

B. go

C. going

D. going to

8. I'm going \_\_\_\_\_. I need to buy some food.

A. Swimming

B. shopping

C. running

D. dancing

9. He is short, but he looks \_\_\_\_\_ heavy.  
 A. a little                      B. a little of                      C. a lot of                      D. a bit of
10. — Tom is not very heavy.  
 — I think we should say he is \_\_\_\_\_ heavy.  
 A. a little                      B. a bit                      C. a little bit                      D. A,B and C
11. Jim wants to be a \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. actor                      B. actress                      C. sing                      D. singer
12. Each of us \_\_\_\_\_ an English name.  
 A. had                      B. has                      C. is                      D. are
13. Please put the picture \_\_\_\_\_ the newspapers.  
 A. on                      B. at                      C. by                      D. in
14. \_\_\_\_\_, Tom gets to the bus station on time.  
 A. In the end                      B. On the end                      C. In end                      D. At the end of
15. \_\_\_\_\_ he have a medium build?  
 A. Are                      B. Has                      C. There                      D. Does
16. Mike and Tom \_\_\_\_\_ the cinema tomorrow.  
 A. goes to                      B. go to                      C. are going to                      D. are going
17. We are in different \_\_\_\_\_, but we are studying in \_\_\_\_\_ way.  
 A. class; same                      B. class; the same                      C. classes; the same                      D. classes; same
18. Does your father \_\_\_\_\_ a computer?  
 A. has                      B. have                      C. is                      D. are
19. — \_\_\_\_\_?  
 — He is very heavy.  
 A. Is Jack thin or heavy                      B. Is Jack thin  
 C. Is Jack heavy                      D. Is Jack tall or short
20. Mike has \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. big eyes; a small nose                      B. big eyes; small nose  
 C. big eye; a small nose                      D. a big eye; small nose

#### 四、完形填空

There is a shy girl in our class. She is thirteen 1 old. She is not tall and she is not short. She is of medium 2. Her face is red and round, 3 an apple. Her eyes are big and nose is small. Her 4 is short and black. She likes red, and she often 5 a red sweater, red pants and red shoes. She 6 a pair of glasses. She 7 early every day, so she is 8 late for school. She doesn't like to talk 9 others. She likes little animals, 10 she has a little dog. She often plays with the dog. .

1. A. years                      B. months                      C. weeks                      D. days  
 2. A. look                      B. build                      C. face                      D. building  
 3. A. . as                      B. on                      C. like                      D. likes

- |                |            |             |             |
|----------------|------------|-------------|-------------|
| 4. A. hair     | B. hand    | C. height   | D. face     |
| 5. A. wears    | B. makes   | C. has      | D. have     |
| 6. A. puts on  | B. wears   | C. buys     | D. dress    |
| 7. A. gets on  | B. gets up | C. gets off | D. gets off |
| 8. A. always   | B. never   | C. usually  | D. ever     |
| 9. A. to       | B. about   | C. of       | D. on       |
| 10. A. because | B. but     | C. and      | D. or       |

## 五、阅读理解

### (A)

Mrs. Brown is very fat (胖). "Don't eat meat or cakes," her doctor says to her. "I'm going to stop her eating them, doctor," her husband (丈夫) says.

The next morning, Mrs. Brown makes a nice cake, and her husband eats half of it. After he goes out, Mrs. Brown cuts (切) a very small piece of the cake and eats it. It is very good. She cuts a bigger piece and eats it. In a few minutes she finishes the cake. "My husband is going to be very angry (生气)," she says. "What am I going to do?"

She makes another cake very quickly, eats half of that, and leaves half on the table.

Her husband comes back later. He sees the half of the cake on the table and he is very happy.

- The doctor tells Mrs. Brown not to eat meat or cakes because \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. Mrs. Brown likes them                      B. meat and cakes can make her fatter  
 C. Mr. Brown tells the doctor to say so      D. meat and cakes are not good food
- The next morning Mrs. Brown makes a cake for \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. her husband              B. her children              C. her sister              D. the doctor
- Mr. Brown eats \_\_\_\_\_ hat morning.  
 A. one cake              B. half cakes              C. half a cake              D. many cakes
- Mrs. Brown makes another cake because \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. she is good at making cakes              B. her husband likes cakes  
 C. she wants to eat more cakes  
 D. if her husband knows she eats the half of the cake, he will be angry
- Why is Mr. Brown very happy when he sees the half of the cake on the table?  
 Because \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. he is angry  
 B. Mrs. Brown likes cakes very much  
 C. the cake is nice and delicious  
 D. he thinks Mrs. Brown begins to stop eating cakes

### (B)

My father is tall and has short, gray (灰白的) hair. He wears glasses with heavy, black



frames (框架). But I just see a picture of him from 1968. What a surprise! In the picture, he's 15 years old. He's short and he has glasses with small, round frames. He has long, yellow hair and it's really straight. He's wearing blue jeans and a T-shirt with the word "Love". I'm 15 years old now. I'm medium height and I have short hair. My hair isn't yellow, it's blue. My dad thinks it's strange (奇怪的), but my friends think it's great. I wear glasses, but my glasses have bright red frames. They're so cool! I have an earring (耳环) in one ear, too. Dad really can't understand (明白) that, I never wear blue jeans. I like big, baggy (松的) pants and long T-shirts. Most of my T-shirts have pictures of my favorite rock bands (摇滚乐队) on them.

6. What kind of glasses does Father wear when he is fifteen years old? He wears \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. glasses with heavy, black frames                      B. glasses with bright red frames  
C. long and yellow glasses                                  D. glasses with small, round frames
7. What color is my hair? It's \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. yellow                      B. blue                      C. gray                      D. red
8. What do I like to wear? I like to wear \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. blue jeans and a T-shirt                      B. big, baggy pants and long T-shirts.  
C. red T-shirt                                      D. small pants and short T-shirts.

六、书面表达

1. 句子翻译

1. 首先，她是一位艺术家。  
\_\_\_\_\_.
2. — 你的妈妈长什么样?  
— 他又高又瘦。  
\_\_\_\_\_.  
\_\_\_\_\_?
3. 他留长头发还是卷头发?  
\_\_\_\_\_.
4. 许多人并不总是用相同的方式看待问题。  
\_\_\_\_\_.
5. 他下个星期天将去公园。  
\_\_\_\_\_.

2. 短文写作

你们班来了一位新同学陈峰，请根据以下资料介绍他的情况。  
要求：条理清楚，语句通顺，书写规范，不少于 50 个词。

姓名：陈峰	年龄：14 岁
出生地：广州	身高：171cm
体重：50kg	爱好：打篮球、听音乐、阅读
外貌特征：黑色短发	

\*成篇

My new classmate is a boy of fourteen. His name is Chen Feng. He was born in Guangzhou. He is 50 kg weight and he is 1.71 meters tall. His strongly-built body makes him look like a sportsman. He has short black hair. He likes playing basketball, listening to music and reading. I want to make friends with him.

## ►►► Unit 10 I'd like some noodles.

### \*知识清单

语言聚焦	单词	noodle <i>n.</i> 面条    mutton <i>n.</i> 羊肉    beef <i>n.</i> 牛肉    special <i>n.</i> 特色菜; 特价品 <i>adj.</i> 特别的; 特殊的 would <i>modal.</i> (表示意愿) 愿意    yet <i>adv.</i> (常用于否定句或疑问句) 还; 仍然 large <i>adj.</i> 大号的; 大的    order <i>n &amp; v.</i> 点菜; 命令    size <i>n.</i> 大小, 尺寸 lucky <i>adj.</i> 幸运的    popular <i>adj.</i> 受欢迎的; 流行    idea <i>n.</i> 想法; 主意
	短语	take one's order 点菜    a bowl of noodles 一碗面条    beef soup 牛肉汤    green tea 绿茶 around the world 世界各地    make a wish 许愿    blow out 吹灭 get popular 受欢迎    cut up 切碎    bring good luck to ...给……带来好运
	句型	(1) —What kind of noodles would you like? 你想要哪种面条? —I'd like some beef noodles. 我想要牛肉面。 (2) —Is there any meat in the tomato and egg soup? 西红柿鸡蛋汤里有肉吗? —No, there isn't any. /No, there's no meat. 不, 没有。/不, 没有肉。 (3) —What size would you like? 你想要多大碗的呢? —Large, please. 大碗。

### \*语法精讲

#### 可数名词与不可数名词

(一) 英语中的名词分为可数名词和不可数名词。可数名词指可以计数的事物的名词, 有单、复数之分, 可以直接用不定冠词 a/an 或具体的数词等来修饰。不可数名词指不可以计数的事物的名词, 没有复数形式, 但有量的变化。不能直接用冠词或具体的数词来修饰, 它们分别包括以下几种名词:

可数名词	个体名词	用来指单个人或单个事物的名词	car 汽车 classroom 教室
	集体名词	用来指一群人或一些事物总称的名词 (单复数同形)	army 军队 police 警察
不可数名词	物质名词	用来指无法分为个体的物质、材料的名词	water 水 bread 面包
	抽象名词	用来指人或事物的品质、情感、状态、动作等抽象概念的名词	love 爱 time 时间

## (二) 既可作可数名词也可作不可数名词的词

可数名词	不可数名词
a glass 一个玻璃杯	Glass 玻璃
a paper 一份报纸	Paper 纸
a chicken 一只鸡	Chicken 鸡肉
a fish 一条鱼	fish 鱼肉
a room 一个房间	Room 空间
a light 一盏灯	light 光线
a orange 一个橙子	orange 橙汁

## (三) 常用复数形式的名词: clothes 衣服 gloves 手套 trousers 长裤 socks 短袜

## 拓展延伸: 可数名词与不可数名词的区别:

1. 不可数名词可以用量词来表示数量, 这些量词中的名词是可数的, 有单复数形式。应该注意的是, 无论量词是单数还是复数, 不可数名词都不能有复数形式的变化。如:

a cup of tea 一杯茶 two bottles of orange 两瓶橘汁

2. 可数名词用 how many 来询问数量, 不可数名词用 how much 来询问数量。如:

How many apples in the basket? 篮子里有多少苹果啊?

How much milk is there in the bottle? 这个瓶子里有多少牛奶?

3. 可数名词作主语时, 谓语动词的单复数与主语是单复数保持一致; 不可数名词作主语时, 谓语动词要用单数形式, 但是不可数名词前有复数的“单位词”时, 谓语动词要用复数形式, 如:

The picture is very beautiful. 这幅画很美。

There are two cups of tea on the table. 桌上有两杯茶。

4. 单数可数名词表示泛指时, 前面要用不定冠词 a/an, 表示特指时, 前面要用定冠词 the; 而不可数名词不能用 a/an, 表示特指时, 前面一定要用定冠词, 如:

He is a factory worker. 他是个工人。

No one can see air. 没有人能看见空气。

5. 可数名词和不可数名词的修饰词:

修饰可数名词: a few (一些), few (几乎没有), many (许多)

修饰不可数名词: a little (一点), little (几乎没有), much (许多)

两者均可: some (一些), any (一些), a lot of (许多)

## 语法精练【活用】

## 单项选择题:

- Mr. Black gave us \_\_\_\_\_ on how to learn English  
A. an advice B. many advice C. some advice D. some advices
- What kind of noodles would you like?

- I'd like some \_\_\_\_\_ noodles.  
 A. eggs, tomato and mutton                      B. eggs, tomatoes and mutton  
 C. egg, tomatoes and mutton                    D. egg, tomato and muttons
3. —Could you please give me some \_\_\_\_\_?  
 —Sure, here you are.  
 A. pieces of papers                                  B. piece of papers  
 C. piece of paper                                    D. pieces of paper
4. I'd like a \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. mutton                      B. beef                      C. banana                      D. apple
5. Give me \_\_\_\_\_ bread and \_\_\_\_\_ green tea, please.  
 A. some; an                      B. some; a                      C. some; some                      D. any; any
6. He knows \_\_\_\_\_ Chinese and has \_\_\_\_\_ Chinese friends.  
 A. much; many                      B. many; much                      C. much; much                      D. many; many
7. —Do I need to buy some eggs for dinner, mum?  
 —Oh, no. There are \_\_\_\_\_ on the table  
 A. two box of eggs                                  B. two boxes of eggs  
 C. two boxes of egg                                  D. two box of egg
8. My father is very busy with his work. He has \_\_\_\_\_ time to read newspapers.  
 A. little                      B. few                      C. a little                      D. a few
9. —Would you like some \_\_\_\_\_?  
 —Oh, yes, just a little.  
 A. pears                      B. oranges                      C. milk                      D. apples
10. —Would you like \_\_\_\_\_ water?  
 —No, thanks. I'm not thirsty.  
 A. a                      B. some                      C. any                      D. little

### \*知识辨析

辨析 1: potato n. 土豆, 马铃薯

There are some potatoes in the basket.

篮子里有一些土豆。

知识拓展:

(1) 以 o 结尾的词加 es 变复数的名词有:

hero (英雄) —heroes                      potato (土豆) —potatoes

tomato (西红柿) —tomatoes      negro (黑人) —negroes

(2) tomato、potato、beef 等词修饰名词时, 常用单词形式。如:

a noodle house 一家面馆      beef noodles 牛肉面

## 【活用】

- ① — Would you like some \_\_\_\_ for dinner?  
— OK.  
A. tomatos                      B. tomato                      C. tomatoes                      D. a tomato
- ② There are a lot of \_\_\_\_\_ in the supermarket.  
A. potato                      B. potatoes                      C. potatos                      D. a potato
- ③ He'd like a bowl of \_\_\_\_\_ noodles.  
A. tomato and eggs                      B. tomatoes and egg  
C. tomatoes                      D. tomato and egg

辨析 2: size n. 尺寸, 既可以表示事物的大小, 又可以指服装、鞋帽等的尺寸、号码。

## 【活用】

- ① — Well, a kind of noodles with beef and tomato. OK, then what \_\_\_\_\_ would you like, sir?  
— A small bowl, please.  
A. price                      B. time                      C. size                      D. color

- ② \_\_\_\_\_ shirt do you wear?

“你穿多大号的衬衣?”

辨析 3: would like (表示意愿) 愿意; 喜欢

—What kind of noodles would you like? 你想要哪种面条?

—I'd like beef noodles, please. 我想要牛肉面。

知识拓展: would like 的其他用法

- ① would like sth. 表示具体要某样东西。  
② would like to do sth. 想要做某事。  
③ would you like ...? 你(们)想要……吗? 表示向对方提出客气的、有礼貌的请求、邀请、希望和询问等。肯定回答: Yes, please. / Yes, I'd like. 否定回答: No, thanks. I'd like, but...

## 【活用】

- ① —What \_\_\_\_\_ you like?  
—I'd like beef soup.  
A. will                      B. would                      C. do                      D. should
- ② —What would Lily like?  
—\_\_\_\_\_ an egg.  
A. He likes                      B. She had                      C. She'd like                      D. She likes
- ③ He would like \_\_\_\_\_ (eat) apples. (用所给词的正确形式填空)
- ④ Would you like to go to the zoo with me? (改为同义句)
- \_\_\_\_\_.

⑤ I'd like some oranges. (改为一般疑问句)

\_\_\_\_\_ you like \_\_\_\_\_ oranges?

附加: like prep, 意为“比如”; 介词 like 也可意为“像”。常用表达有: be/ look like 像/看起来像

We have different kinds of fruit ice-cream, like banana or orange.

He looks like his mother.

### 【活用】

根据汉语意思完成英语句子, 每空一词。

⑥ 他喜欢这个食品, 如豆腐、面条, 以及饺子等。

He \_\_\_\_\_ Chinese food, \_\_\_\_\_ tofu, noodles and dumplings.

⑦ 我有不同种类的球, 比如篮球、足球等。

I have different kinds of balls, \_\_\_\_\_ basketballs and footballs.

辨析 4: meat 是不可数名词, 意为“肉”, 是各种肉的总称, 是不可数名词。

知识拓展: 本单元可数名词与不可数名词的总结 (有关食物)

(1) beef (牛肉)、mutton (羊肉)、chicken (鸡肉)、fish (鱼肉)、rice (大米)、porridge (粥)。

(2) dumpling (饺子)、onion (洋葱)、noodle (面条) 是可数名词。

(3) cabbage: 如果指一棵一棵的大白菜的时候, 是可数名词, 作不可数名词时指做熟的菜。

### 【活用】

根据句意及首字母或汉语提示填写单词

① We'd like some \_\_\_\_\_ (粥) for breakfast.

② Linda has some rice and f \_\_\_\_\_ for lunch.

③ We have all kinds of \_\_\_\_\_ (饺子) in our restaurant.

辨析 5: or conj. 意为“和”

知识拓展: and 和 or 的用法区别

两者都可作连词, 连接并列成分时, 意为 (和)

(1) and 一般用于肯定句, or 用于否定句和疑问句, 两者通常不可互换。如句中有三个或三个以上并列成分, 则 and 或 or 只连接最后两个成分, 前面的成分分别用逗号隔开。

(2) 在否定句中, 如果所连接两个词都有否定词时, 则用 and, 而不用 or。

### 【活用】

① I don't like chicken, mutton \_\_\_\_\_ pork.

A. and

B. but

C. or

D. so

② Bill likes beef, dumplings \_\_\_\_\_ fish.

A. and

B. but

C. of

D. so

③ He likes fish \_\_\_\_\_ beef. 他喜欢鱼肉和牛肉。

④ We learn dancing, singing \_\_\_\_\_. 我们相信跳舞、唱歌、游泳和绘画。

**辨析 6:** the number of ……数量, 做主语时谓语动词用单数形式。

The number of students in our class is 50. 我们班学生的人数是 50。

**知识拓展:** the number of 与 a number of 的用法区别

the number of, 意为“……的数量”, 作主语时谓语动词用单数形式; a number of, 意为“许多, 大量”, 作主语时谓语动词用复数形式。如:

A number of students are running on the playground. 许多学生正在操场跑步。

The number of the teachers in our school is 100. 我们学校老师的数是 100 人。

### 【活用】

① — How many girls are there in your class?

— \_\_\_\_\_ them \_\_\_\_\_ over twenty.

A. A number of; are

B. The number of; is

C. A number of; is

D. The number of; are

② In our city there \_\_\_\_\_ a number of cars and the number of them \_\_\_\_\_ growing large.

A. are; is

B. have; is

C. is; are

D. has; is

## ☆ 达标检测

### 一、用所给词的适当形式填空

1. He \_\_\_\_\_ like to sit here. (would)

2. How many \_\_\_\_\_ of bread do you have? (piece)

3. She sometimes \_\_\_\_\_ coffee at home. (drink)

4. I would like you \_\_\_\_\_ to my house. (come)

5. They have different \_\_\_\_\_ of tea. (kind)

6. We want to buy some \_\_\_\_\_. (tomato)

7. What kind of \_\_\_\_\_ (meat) would you like?

8. These \_\_\_\_\_ (strawberry) are very good.

9. I hope you can have good \_\_\_\_\_ (lucky).

10. I'd like mutton and \_\_\_\_\_ (tomato) noodles.

### 二、完成句子

1. 他想要多大碗的面条? \_\_\_\_\_ bowl of noodles \_\_\_\_\_ he \_\_\_\_\_ ?

2. 我想要牛肉土豆面。I'd like \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ noodles.

3. 他想要一份中号碗的面条。He'd like \_\_\_\_\_ bowl \_\_\_\_\_ noodles.

4. 你想要哪种蛋糕? \_\_\_\_\_ would

you like ?

5. 我们也有橙汁和绿茶。We \_\_\_\_\_ orange juice and \_\_\_\_\_ .

6. I'd like to have some porridge and onions. (改为否定句)

I \_\_\_\_\_ like to have any porridge \_\_\_\_\_ onions .

7. She wants to eat dumplings. (改为同义句)

She \_\_\_\_\_ to eat dumplings.

8. We have beef noodles. (改为一般疑问句)

\_\_\_\_\_ have beef noodles?

9. I'd like a medium bowl of noodles

\_\_\_\_\_ bowl of noodles would you like ?

10. The girl would like cabbage and onion noodles. (对画线部分提问)

\_\_\_\_\_ of noodles would the girl like?

### 三、单项选择

1. —Would you like green tea \_\_\_\_ juice ?

—I don't like green tea \_\_\_\_ juice.

A. and, and

B. or, or

C. and, or

D. or, and

2. —Would you like \_\_\_\_ tea with ice in it ?

—Yes, \_\_\_\_\_ .

A. any, would

B. some, please

C. any, will

D. some, will

3. The noodles with orange juice \_\_\_\_ only \$ 1.5.

A. is

B. are

C. for

D. with

4. —How many \_\_\_\_ would you like ?

—Two, please .

A. cup of tea

B. cups of tea

C. cup of tea

D. cups of teas

5. Some chicken \_\_\_\_ in the bowl . And some \_\_\_\_ are in the garden.

A. is, chicken

B. are, chicken

C. is, chickens

D. are, chickens

6. He'd like some \_\_\_\_ noodles.

A. onions and mutton

B. onions and muttons

C. onion and muttons

D. onion and mutton

7. —Would you like some ice cream, Vera?

\_\_\_\_\_ It's my favorite.

A. No, I'm not thirsty.

B. No, thanks.

C. Yes, I do.

D. Yes, please.

8. I'd like \_\_\_\_ some rice and fish for supper.

A. eat

B. eats

C. eating

D. to eat

9. There's some \_\_\_\_ on the table.

A. milk

B. onion

C. tomato

D. potato



10. —What size of shoes would you like ?  
—I'd like \_\_\_\_ ones.  
A. black                      B. blue                      C. a medium                      D. large
11. —\_\_\_\_ are the large shirts?  
—Only \$4.  
A. How                      B. How many                      C. How much                      D. How often
12. —\_\_\_\_ ?  
—I'd like to buy a pair of shoes for my daughter .  
A. Excuse me .                      B. I'm hungry .  
C. Can I help you                      D. Can you help me?
13. \_\_\_\_ meat would your brother want ?  
A. How                      B. How many                      C. How much                      D. What
14. My brother likes potatoes . He \_\_\_\_ likes hamburgers .  
A. too                      B. also                      C. other                      D. others
15. What \_\_\_\_ food would you like, Mary ?  
A. kind                      B. kind of                      C. kind for                      D. of kind
16. Many students \_\_\_\_ over there. The number of the students \_\_\_\_ about 200.  
A. is; is                      B. are; are                      C. is; are                      D. are; is
17. I'd like \_\_\_\_ some green cabbage.  
A. eat                      B. eats                      C. eating                      D. to eat
18. His sister doesn't like mutton \_\_\_\_ rice.  
A. or                      B. and                      C. with                      D. but
19. You can't \_\_\_\_ the candles. It's too dark (暗的) in the room.  
A. blow up                      B. put out                      C. blow out                      D. take out
20. I often \_\_\_\_ and eat birthday cakes \_\_\_\_ my birthday.  
A. make a wish; in                      B. make a wish; of  
C. make a wish; on                      D. make a wish; in

#### 四、完形填空

People in different 1 like to eat different food. 2 kind of food do people in the UK 3 to eat ? Fish and fried 4 chips (条) are very 5 in the UK. Sometimes people 6 them at home, but they usually go to a fast food 7 to buy them. They can have them 8 the restaurant or 9 them away home. Sometimes, they 10 like to eat them in a park.

1. A. country                      B. countries                      C. city                      D. countryside  
2. A. Who                      B. When                      C. What                      D. Where  
3. A. would like                      B. likes                      C. like                      D. liking  
4. A. potato                      B. potatoes                      C. potatos                      D. a potato  
5. A. cheap                      B. large                      C. popular                      D. small

- |                  |            |                |            |
|------------------|------------|----------------|------------|
| 6. A. cooking    | B. cook    | C. cooks       | D. cooker  |
| 7. A. restaurant | B. library | C. supermarket | D. room    |
| 8. A. in         | B. on      | C. under       | D. of      |
| 9. A. get        | B. bring   | C. take        | D. took    |
| 10. A. and       | B. also    | C. too         | D. neither |

### 五、阅读理解

#### (A)

In many English homes, people eat four meals a day: breakfast, lunch, afternoon tea and dinner .

People have breakfast at any time from seven to nine in the morning. They eat porridge, eggs or bread. English people drink tea or coffee at breakfast .

Lunch comes at one o'clock . Afternoon tea is from four to five in the afternoon and dinner is about half past seven . First they have soup. Then they have meat or fish with vegetables. After that they eat some other things, like bananas, apples, or oranges .

But not all English people eat like that. Some of them have their dinner in the middle of the day. Their meals are breakfast, dinner, tea and supper and all these meals are very simple.

- Many English people have \_\_\_\_\_ meals a day.  
A. two                      B. three                      C. four                      D. three or four
- People may have their breakfast \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. before seven                      B. at any time  
C. after seven                      D. at any time from seven to nine
- Tea comes \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. at one                      B. after supper                      C. before supper                      D. at any time
- Lunch comes at \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. one o'clock                      B. two o'clock                      C. three o'clock                      D. four o'clock
- \_\_\_\_\_ of English people have their dinner in the middle of the day.  
A. Few                      B. Some                      C. Most                      D. Lots

#### (B)

One Sunday morning Mr. Green and his child, Bill ,are in a big shop . Mr. Green wants to buy a new blouse for Mrs. Green . Bill likes oranges, so his father buys two kilos (公斤) of oranges for him, too. Bill wants to buy some picture—books and color pencils, too. There are many people in the shop. They are men and women, old and young . They all want to buy something there .

- Mr. Green goes to the shop with \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. Mrs. green                      B. his son                      C. his daughter                      D. his father
- Mr. Green wants to buy a new blouse for \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. Bill's mother                      B. Bill                      C. his friend                      D. other people

8. Bill likes\_\_\_\_\_.

A. all the things

B. the new blouse

C. oranges

D. orange

9. Bill wants to buy\_\_\_\_\_.

A. some picture—books

B. some color pencils

C. clothes in the shop

D. A and B

10. The shop is \_\_\_\_\_.

A. empty

B. close

C. full of children

D. full of people

## 六、书面表达

根据以下信息为朱老大饺子屋（Zhu Laoda Dumpling House）写一则广告。

**提示：**（1）本店饺子品种齐全，个大味美（2）现有两种特价饺子：鸡蛋蔬菜饺子每10个3元；牛肉饺子每10个5元（3）欢迎光临本店。地址：光明路118号。电话：685-8588。

### Zhu Laoda Dumpling House

Would you like to have dumplings? At Zhu Laoda Dumpling House, we have all kinds of dumplings and they are all large and delicious.

Now we have two great specials! Special 1 has eggs and vegetables and is just 3 yuan for 10. Special 2 is only 5yuan for 10 and has beef and vegetables.

Welcome to our house! The address is No.118 Guangming Road .Our telephone number is 685-8588.

## ►►►► Unit 11 How was your school trip?

### \*知识清单

语言聚焦	单词	quite adv.相当；完全	grow (grew) v.种植；生长；发育	anything pron.任何东西；任何事物
		farm n. 农场	farmer n.农民	pick v.采；摘
		excellent adj.极好的；优秀的	countryside n.乡下；农村	feed (fed) v.饲养；喂
		flower n.花	cow n.奶牛	horse n.马
		worry v.& n.担心；担忧	lucky adj. →luckily adv.幸运地；好运地	museum n.博物馆
		robot n.机器人	guide n.导游；向导	gift n.礼物；赠品
		lovely adj.可爱的	slow adj.缓慢的；迟缓的	fast adj.& adv.快的（地）
		expensive adj.昂贵的	cheap adj.廉价的；便宜的	dark adj.黑暗的；昏暗的
		exciting adj.令人激动的；使人兴奋的	interested adj.感兴趣的	

（续表）

短 语	go for a walk 去散步      milk a cow 挤牛奶      ride a horse 骑马      feed chickens 喂鸡 talk with 和……交谈      take photos 拍照      show...around 带领……参观 in the countryside 在农村      go fishing 去钓鱼      go to the zoo 去动物园 climb the mountains 爬山      visit a museum 参观博物馆      fire station 消防站 draw picture 画画      science museum 科学博物馆      by train 乘火车      in all 一共；总共 be interested in 对……感兴趣      not...at all 一点也不      quite a lot 相当多 learn about 了解      grow strawberries 种植草莓      pick strawberries 采草莓 from...to... 从……到……      at night 在夜晚      come out 出来      along the way 沿线 a lot of 许多；大量      buy sth. for sb. = buy sb. sth. 为某人买某物 go on a school trip 去学校郊游      after that 之后      all in all 总的来说
	句 型  (1) How was your school trip?你的学校旅游怎么样? (2) —Did you see any cows?你看见奶牛了吗? —Yes, I did. I saw quite a lot.是的, 我看见了許多。 (3) —Did you ride a horse?你骑马了吗? —No, I didn't. But I milked a cow.不, 我没有, 但我挤牛奶了。 (4) —Were the strawberries good?草莓好吃吗? —yes, They were/No they weren't.是的, 好吃。/不, 不好吃。 (5) Then the guide taught us how to make a model robot.然后, 导游教我们怎样制作机器人模型。

## \*语法精讲

### 一般过去时态

一般过去时的概念：表示过去某个时间发生的动作或存在的状态。

#### 四种用法

① 表示在过去某个时间发生的动作或情况。

Mike went to school at 7:00 yesterday morning.麦克昨天早晨七点去上学。

② 表示在过去某个时间存在的状态。

He was not at home last night.他昨晚八点没在家。

③ 表示在过去经常或反复发生的动作，常和 often（经常）、always（总是）、sometimes（有时）等表示频率的时间状语连用。

Mary often had lunch at school last month.玛丽上个月经常在学校吃午饭。

④ 表示已故的人所做的事情或情况。

Ba Jin wrote a lot of novels for us.巴金写了很多部小说。

#### 四种时间状语

① yesterday 及相关短语。

yesterday morning/afternoon/evening 昨天上午/下午/晚上。

② “last+ 时间状语” 构成的短语。

last night/month/spring/year 昨晚/上个月/去年春天/去年。

③ “一段时间+ago” 组成的短语。

three days ago 三天以前 four years ago 四年以前。

④ “介词+ 时间名词” 组成的短语。

in 1999 在 1999 年; on the morning of December 25th 在 12 月 25 号早上。

#### 四种谓语动词的表现形式

① be 动词的过去式 was、were。

My mum was a teacher five years ago. 我妈妈五年前是一名教师。

② 行为动词的过去式, 分为规则动词和不规则动词两种。

规则动词过去式

规则动词的过去式的构成遵循以下四个规则:

1) 直接在动词后加 ed, 例如: help-helped; want-wanted 等;

2) 以不发音的字母 e 结尾时, 去掉 e 加 ed (即直接加 d), 例如: like-liked; use-used 等;

3) 以辅音字母 y 结尾时, 把 y 变成 i 再加 ed, 例如: carry-carried; study-studied 等;

4) 以重读闭音节结尾, 双写最后一个辅音字母再加 ed, 例如: stop-stopped; shop-shopped 等。

不规则动词的过去式 (常见)

am, is-was	are-were	do-did	see-saw	say-said	give-gave
get-got	go-went	come-came	have-had	eat-ate	take-took
run-ran	sing-sang	put-put	fly-flew	make-made	
read-read	write-wrote	draw-drew	drink-drank		
ride-rode	speak-spoke	sweep-swept	swim-swam	sit-sat	

③ 连系动词的过去式。

become-became She became angry. 她生气了。

④ 情态动词的过去式+动词原形。

I could swim at the age of five. 我五岁时就会游泳了。

#### 四种句式的构成

① 一般过去时态的肯定句式 “主语+动词过去式+其他”

Anny bought a skirt yesterday. 安妮昨天买了一件短裙。

② 一般过去时态的否定句式 “主语+didn't+动词原形+其他”

Anny didn't buy a skirt yesterday. 安妮昨天没有买短裙。

③ 一般过去时态的一般疑问句式 “Did+主语+动词原形+其他”

Did Anny buy a skirt yesterday? 安妮昨天买短裙了吗?

④ 一般过去时态的特殊疑问句式 “疑问词+did+主语+动词原形+其他”

What did Anny buy yesterday? 安妮昨天买了什么?

【活用】

- ① Last week Mary \_\_\_\_\_ a shirt for her father with her first- month salary.  
A. buy                      B. bought                      C. will buy                      D. would buy
- ② —Where did you go yesterday?  
—I \_\_\_\_\_ to the Summer Palace.  
A. go                      B. will go                      C. went                      D. have gone
- ③ \_\_\_\_\_ your parents at home last week  
A. Is                      B. Was                      C. Are                      D. Were

\*知识辨析

辨析 1: quite *adv.* 相当; 完全

You are quite right. 你完全正确。

I saw quite a lot. 我看到了很多。

Quite/ very 的用法区别

1) quite 是程度副词，可修饰副词、形容词和动词，跟表示“程度的”词连用时，有“相当”、“非常”的意思。跟“没有程度差距的”词连用时，作“完全”解。如：

I feel quite well. 我觉得身体很不错。

I'm quite tired. 我相当累了。

We are not quite ready. 我们还没有完全准备好。

2) very 也是程度副词，意为“很”，“非常”。可用于修饰形容词或副词，但不可直接修饰动词。如：

This factory is very large. 这家工厂很大。

He runs very fast. 他跑得很快。

有时两者可以通用，在份量上 very 比 quite 重。试比较：

His French is quite good. (=not bad) 他的法语很不错。

His French is very good. (=excellent) 他的法语好极了。

注意：quite 和 very 与不定冠词连用时的位置：

quite (+a/an) + 形容词 + 名词

(a) very + 形容词 + 名词

He is quite a clever boy.

He is a very clever boy.

【活用】

- ① 我妈妈相当生气。

My mother \_\_\_\_\_ .

- ② 她的英语非常好。

Her English \_\_\_\_\_ .

③ 她是一个非常漂亮的女孩。

She is \_\_\_\_\_ .

**辨析 2: worry v.& n. 担心、担忧**

Don't worry, I'll be back soon. 别担心, 我很快会回来的。

My father's illness is always a great worry to me. 父亲的病一直是我非常担心的事。

**知识拓展:**

worry 作动词时, 常用 worry (about)sth./sb. “担心……”; 也可以说: be worried about sth./sb. “担心……”(在这里, worried 是作为形容词)。

My mother worried about the matter. 我妈妈担心这件事情。

She is worried about her test. 她担心她的考试。

**【活用】**

① 我担心我的妈妈。

I \_\_\_\_\_ my mum.

② 不要担心他

Don't \_\_\_\_\_ him?

**辨析 3: luckily adv. 幸运地; 好运地**

Luckily, I passed the final exam. 幸运的是, 我通过了期末考试。

**知识拓展: luck、lucky、luckily 的区别和用法**

(1) luck 名词 “幸运”, 用在形容词后, 如: Good luck!

(2) lucky 形容词 “幸运的” 修饰名词作定语或用在系动词后作表语。

He is so lucky that he have a chance to go abroad .

(3) luckily 副词 “幸运地” 用来修饰动词或句子。

Luckily, he didn't hurt badly .

**【活用】**

① Last night there was a big fire in this area. \_\_\_\_\_, no one was hurt.

A. Luckily                      B. Unluckily                      C. Sadly                      D. Easily

② \_\_\_\_\_, I was the only one who got gifts.

A. Easily                      B. Interesting                      C. Luckily                      D. Happy

**辨析 4: exciting adj. 令人激动的; 使人兴奋的**

All in all, it was an exciting day. 总的来说, 是令人兴奋的一天。

(1) excited 表示 “兴奋的”, 主语通常是人, 常用短语 be excited to do sth. “做……很兴奋”, be excited about sth. “对……感到很兴奋”

(2) exciting 表示 “令人兴奋的; 使人激动的”, 指人、事、物本身让人兴奋、激动。\* 一般情况下, 人做主语, 用 v-ed; 物做主语, 用 v-ing。

The news that our team won is exciting.

I am excited. 我很兴奋。

It is exciting. 这件事令我兴奋。

① We were all \_\_\_\_\_ when we heard the \_\_\_\_\_ news.

- ② Kate was \_\_\_\_\_ when she got an A.

- A. exciting                      B. excited                      C.to excited                      D. to exciting

I am interested in English very much.我对英语非常感兴趣。

(1) interesting 表示使人感兴趣, 属外向性质的词, 用于指人、事、物的外在影响方面。interested 表示某人自己本身感兴趣, 属内向性质的词, 用于指人的内心感受方面。

The story is very interesting, so all the children are interested in it.

这个故事很有趣，所以所有的孩子都对它感兴趣。

(2) interesting 形容词, 主语通常是物。可以作表语, 也可以作定语。interested 形容词 意为“感兴趣的”; “对……感兴趣”, 主语通常是人, 但很多时候 interesting 不一定指物, interested 不一定指人。

Our head teacher is very interesting. 我们的班主任很有趣。

I read an interested expression on his face. 我看到他脸上露出一种感兴趣的表情。

(3) be interested 之后可接 in doing sth. 或 to do sth., 含义稍有差别: 接前者意为“对做某事感兴趣”, 接后者意为“有兴趣地做某事”。

He is interested in becoming a painter. 他对当画家很感兴趣（即一心想当画家）。

We are interested to hear your remark. 我们很有兴趣想听听你的意见。

interested 多用于 be / get / feel / become interested in 结构中。

- ① be interested in sth. 对某事感兴趣。

- ② be interested in doing sth. 对做某事感兴趣。

He is interested in the film. 他对这部电影感兴趣。

I am interested in English. 我对英语感兴趣。

He is interested in playing football. 他对踢足球感兴趣。

① There is something \_\_\_\_\_ in the newspaper.

- A. interested                  B. interesting                  C. interest                  D. interests



- ② Mark is \_\_\_\_\_ in the \_\_\_\_\_ film.  
 A. interested; interesting                      B. interesting; interested  
 C. interest; interests                          D. interesting; interests

### ☆ 达标检测

#### 一、用所给词的适当形式填空

- Carol \_\_\_\_\_ (have) an exciting party last weekend.
- \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ (practice) speaking English yesterday?  
 — No, I \_\_\_\_\_.
- What \_\_\_\_\_ your sister \_\_\_\_\_ (do) on Saturday evening?  
 She \_\_\_\_\_ (watch) TV and \_\_\_\_\_ (read) an interesting book.
- They all \_\_\_\_\_ (go) shopping yesterday morning.
- Mary \_\_\_\_\_ (not visit) her aunt last weekend.  
 She \_\_\_\_\_ (stay) at home and \_\_\_\_\_ (do) some cleaning.
- When \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ (write) this book? I \_\_\_\_\_ (write) it last year.
- I'm \_\_\_\_\_ (worry) about my son's illness.
- Peter \_\_\_\_\_ (feed) the chickens this morning.
- We are \_\_\_\_\_ about the \_\_\_\_\_ news (excite).
- \_\_\_\_\_ (luck), we got there before it rained.

#### 二、完成句子

- 我们过了一个忙碌但却刺激的周末。  
 We \_\_\_\_\_ exciting weekend.
- 我喜欢看书。昨晚我看了一本英语书。  
 I like \_\_\_\_\_. I \_\_\_\_\_ an English book last night.
- 上周末你们做什么了？我们做作业和购物了。  
 What \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ weekend?  
 We \_\_\_\_\_ homework and \_\_\_\_\_.
- 别忘了向老师说声再见。  
 Don't forget \_\_\_\_\_ the teacher.
- 你的弟弟什么时候出生的。—1980 年。  
 —When \_\_\_\_\_ your brother \_\_\_\_\_?  
 —\_\_\_\_\_ 1980.
- Mary did her homework last night. (改为否定句)  
 Mary \_\_\_\_\_ her homework last night.
- There was some water in the cup. (变为一般疑问句)

\_\_\_\_\_ there \_\_\_\_\_ water in the cup?

8. Linda read an interesting book about history. (变为一般疑问句)

\_\_\_\_\_ Linda \_\_\_\_\_ an interesting book about history?

9. Why not go out for a walk? (改为同义句)

\_\_\_\_\_ out for a walk?

10. My family went to the park last week. (就画线部分提问)

\_\_\_\_\_ family \_\_\_\_\_ last week?

### 三、单项选择

1. My father \_\_\_\_\_ in good health yesterday.

- A. isn't                      B. aren't                      C. wasn't                      D. weren't

2. \_\_\_\_\_ your parents at home last night?

- A. Is                              B. Was                              C. Are                              D. Were

3. The twins \_\_\_\_\_ in Dalian last year. They \_\_\_\_\_ here now.

- A. are; were                      B. were; are                      C. was; are                      D. were; was

4. \_\_\_\_\_ your mother at work the day \_\_\_\_\_ yesterday(前天)?

- A. Was; before                      B. Is; before                      C. Was; after                      D. Is; after

5. —Who was on duty yesterday?

—\_\_\_\_\_.

- A. I am                              B. I was                              C. Yes, I was                      D. No, I wasn't

6. —\_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ shopping yesterday?

—Yes, I did.

- A. Were; do                              B. Was; do                              C. Did do                              D. Did

7. Sue cleaned the classroom \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. with three hours                      B. three hours ago  
C. in three hours                      D. three hours before

8. —\_\_\_\_\_?

—He did some reading at home.

- A. What does your father do yesterday evening  
B. What does your brother do in the school  
C. What did your brother do over the weekend  
D. Where did your brother go last Sunday

9. —When did you go to bed last night?

—About 11 o'clock. I \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. slept early                              B. slept late                              C. got up early                              D. get up early

10. —Were there any tigers in the zoo?

—\_\_\_\_\_ some tigers in the zoo.

- A. Yes, there weren't  
C. Yes, there were
- B. No, there wasn't  
D. Yes, there was.
11. —When \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ your grandpa?  
—The day before yesterday.  
A. will; visit  
C. will; visitor
- B. did; visitor  
D. did; visit
12. He was not at home \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. last night  
B. tomorrow  
C. now  
D. today
13. Sue \_\_\_\_\_ a funny book last night.  
A. looked  
B. readed  
C. read  
D. saw
14. —What did you do \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
—I went to the film.  
A. next morning  
C. in the weekend
- B. over the weekend  
D. next Monday
15. —How \_\_\_\_\_ your trip to New York?  
—Great. I \_\_\_\_\_ a great time there.  
A. was; had  
B. were; have  
C. was, have  
D. were, had
16. —Where \_\_\_\_\_ you go on vacation?  
—I went to Beijing with my family.  
A. do  
B. did  
C. does  
D. were
17. They \_\_\_\_\_ a party last weekend, and they enjoyed themselves.  
A. have  
B. has  
C. had  
D. having
18. He couldn't come to the party \_\_\_\_\_ he was very busy at that time.  
A. so  
B. and  
C. but  
D. because
19. He's leaving \_\_\_\_\_ end of this week.  
A. at  
B. at the  
C. with  
D. with the
20. Did you take any \_\_\_\_\_ on your trip to Beijing?  
A. photo  
B. photoes  
C. photos  
D. photoed
21. We learned \_\_\_\_\_ from the teacher.  
A. many  
B. lot  
C. a lot  
D. a lot of
22. I often worries \_\_\_\_\_ my mother's health.  
A. to  
B. with  
C. of  
D. about
23. —Did you ride a horse ?  
—No, I didn't .but I \_\_\_\_\_ a cow ,and I like drinking \_\_\_\_\_ very much..  
A. milk, milk  
B. milked, milked  
C. milked, milk  
D. milk, milked
24. Finally, \_\_\_\_\_, we went back home by car.  
A. tired and happy  
B. exciting but happy  
C. tired but happy  
D. tiring and happy

25. Did you buy \_\_\_\_\_ in the supermarket?  
A. something                      B. everything                      C. anything                      D. some thing
26. —would you like to join us in playing football?  
—Sorry, I'm not \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. good a quite player                      B. quite a good player  
C. a quite good player                      D. quite good a player
27. She is \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. a girl very smart                      B. a very smart girl  
C. very smart a girl                      D. very a smart girl
28. I can learn \_\_\_\_\_ from this TV program.  
A. quite lot                      B. quite a lot                      C. very lot                      D. many
29. All the students were \_\_\_\_\_ when they saw the \_\_\_\_\_ basketball game.  
A. exciting; excited                      B. excited; exciting  
C. exciting; exciting                      D. excited; excited
30. Mary is \_\_\_\_\_ in reading \_\_\_\_\_ story books.  
A. interesting; interested                      B. interested; interesting  
C. interesting; interesting                      D. interested; interested

#### 四、完形填空

John did not like doing his homework because he liked to do some   1   things after school. And his teacher always   2   a lot of mistakes in his homework.

Then one day his math teacher   3   at John's homework and saw that he got all his answers right. He was very   4   and surprised (惊奇). The next morning before class, he called John   5   his desk and   6   to him: "You got all your homework right this time, did your father help you?"

Sometimes John's father helped him with his homework,   7   this time he didn't help John, because he   8   at home. So John answered: "No, Sir. He was busy last night, so I   9   to do it   10  ."

- |               |             |              |             |
|---------------|-------------|--------------|-------------|
| 1. A. others  | B. another  | C. the other | D. other    |
| 2. A. made    | B. found    | C. looked at | D. looked   |
| 3. A. laughed | B. knocked  | C. looked    | D. saw      |
| 4. A. please  | B. pleased  | C. pleasure  | D. sad      |
| 5. A. to      | B. for      | C. in        | D. at       |
| 6. A. talked  | B. asked    | C. spoke     | D. said     |
| 7. A. and     | B. but      | C. so        | D. or       |
| 8. A. isn't   | B. won't be | C. wasn't    | D. can't be |
| 9. A. wanted  | B. mustn't  | C. liked     | D. had      |
| 10. A. itself | B. of them  | C. myself    | D. himself  |

## 五、阅读理解

## (A)

阅读短文，选择正确答案。

On May 16th, 2016, Mark and his parents went to Qingdao, a city in Shandong for summer vacation. Qingdao is a beautiful city with sea.

It was about 12:00 when they arrived there on the first day. They found a hotel and had a short rest. It was really hot and they decided to go to the beach. At about 3:30 pm, they got to the beach. There were many people there. Some were lying on the beach and many children were playing in the water. Mark was playing with them and he was very happy. His parents also felt relaxed. About two hours later, they went back to the hotel.

On the second day, it rained all day. Mark visited the history museum with his father and his mother went shopping.

On May 18th, they went to Lao shan Mountain in the morning and took a bus home in the afternoon. They were tired but happy.

1. Where did Mark's family go on vacation?  
A. To Shanghai.      B. To Tianjin.      C. To Qingdao.
2. What did Mark's father do on May 17th?  
A. He swam in the sea.  
B. He visited the history museum.  
C. He went shopping with Mark's mother.
3. How long was their vacation?  
A. One day.      B. Two days.      C. Three days.
4. How did they go back home?  
A. By train.      B. By bus.      C. By plane.
5. Which of the following is true?  
A. It rained on May 17th.  
B. They went shopping on May 18th.  
C. Mark didn't play in the water on the first day.

## (B)

Mark Twain(马克·吐温)was an American writer(作家). One day he went to a city by train. He wanted to see one of his friends there. He was a very busy man. He usually forgot something.

When he was in the train, the conductor asked him for his ticket. Mark Twain looked for the ticket here and there, but he couldn't find it. The conductor knew Mark Twain. She said, "Show me your ticket on your way back. And if (如果) you can't find it, it doesn't matter."

"Oh, but it does," said Mark Twain, "I must find the ticket. If I can't find it, how can I know where I'm going?"

阅读短文，然后根据内容判断正(T)误(F)。

6. Mark Twain usually forgot something because he was very busy.
7. Mark Twain didn't want to show his ticket to the conductor.
8. The conductor didn't know Mark Twain.
9. Mark Twain bought a ticket before he got on the train.
10. Mark Twain remembered where he was going.

## 六、书面表达

### 1. 句子翻译

(1) 上个周末黄叔叔带我们到处参观了农场。

---

(2) 上个周末在农场我们学到了许多有关农活知识。

---

(3) 我对打篮球很感兴趣。

---

(4) 下棋是很有趣的。

---

(5) 不要担心我，我是个成年人。（成年人：grown-up）

---

### 2. 短文写作

#### (1)

阅读 Jack 和 Tim 上周六去动物园的游玩的相关文章，体会一般过去时的用法。

范文：

Last Saturday Jack and Tim went to Fancy Zoo. They had a good time there. They met at Jack's house and went there by bike at 8:00. They got to the zoo at 8:30. They saw lots of animals in the zoo, such as snakes, pandas, bears, monkeys and so on. The most interesting thing was that they had their lunch with the monkeys. They went back home at 12:30.

#### (2)

参考上文，写一篇短文，介绍你上个周末是怎样度过的。内容包括：时间、地点、人物、活动及感受等。

写作要求：1. 词数 70 个左右。

2. 信息内容完整，语句连贯。

☆成篇

### My Weekend

I had a great weekend. On Saturday morning, I did my homework. In the afternoon, I went shopping with my best friend Jenny. We ate our dinner at a dumpling house. I felt a little tired but I felt really happy. On Sunday morning, I cleaned my room. In the afternoon I visited my grandparents with my parents. We had dinner there. What a happy weekend I had!

## Unit 12 What did you do last weekend?

### \*知识清单

语言聚焦	单词	camp v. 扎营; 搭帐篷      lake n. 湖泊      beach n. 海滩; 沙滩      sheep n. 绵羊; 羊 natural adj. 自然的      tired adj. 疲倦的; 疲劳的      stay v. 待; 停留      mouse n. 老鼠; 耗子 shout v. 呼叫; 叫喊      language n. 语言      visit n. 访问; 拜访      fly v. 飞      kite n. 风筝 high adj. & adv. 高的(地)      ago adv. 以前      moon n. 月亮      surprise 使惊讶; 惊奇; 惊讶 snake n. 蛇      move v. 移动      jump v. 跳; 跃      wake v. 醒; 弄醒      forest n. 森林
	短语	do my homework 做作业      go boating 去划船      by the lake 在湖边      go to the beach 去海滩 play badminton 打羽毛球      living habits 生活习性      kind of 有点儿      stay up 深夜不睡, 熬夜 fly kites 放风筝      go camping 去野营      put up 支起; 搭起 make a fire 生火      get a surprise 吃惊      shout to... 呼喊……喊叫……      up and down 来来回回; 上上下下 wake... up 把……弄醒      have a good weekend 周末过得愉快 work as 以……身份而工作
	句型	(1) — What did you do last weekend? 上周末你做了什么? — I did my homework. 我做作业。 (2) — Who did you play with? 你和谁一起玩? — I played with my friend. 我和我的朋友一起玩。 (3) Where did she go last weekend? 上周末她去了哪儿? (4) I was so scared that I couldn't move. 我吓坏了, 不能动了。

### \*语法精讲

#### 一般过去时(II) —— 一般过去时的特殊疑问句

#### 一般过去时态回顾

1. 用法: ①过去某个时间发生的动作②过去某个时间存在的状态③过去经常或反复发生的动作

2. 与一般过去时连用的时间状语常见的有:

Yesterday, last night, in 1990, once, two days ago, the day before yesterday, the other day (几天前)

3. 一般过去时的四个基本句型

谓语动词是 be

肯定句 He was in the room yesterday.

否定句 He was not in the room yesterday.

谓语动词是 do

They watched TV yesterday.

They didn't watch TV yesterday.

一般疑问句 Was he in the room yesterday?

Yes, he was. No, he wasn't.

Did they watch TV yesterday?

Yes, they did. No, they didn't.

特殊疑问句 Where was he yesterday?

What did they do yesterday?

#### 4. 动词的过去式和过去分词的规则变化

① 一般在动词词尾加 ed

例: want → wanted

② 以 e 结尾的动词, 只加 d

例: live → lived

③ 以辅音字母加 y 结尾的动词, 改 y 为 i, 再加 ed 例: study → studied

④ 以重读闭音节结尾, 末尾只有一个辅音字母, 双写这一辅音字母, 再加 ed

例: stop → stopped

#### 5. 不规则动词过去式:

am, is-was are-were do-did see-saw say-said give-gave

get-got go-went come-came have-had eat-ate take-took

run-ran sing-sang put-put fly-flew make-made

read-read write-wrote draw-drew drink-drank

ride-ride speak-spoke sweep-swept swim-swam sit-sat

#### 特殊疑问句

特殊疑问句是由特殊疑问代词(who, what, which)和疑问副词(Where, when, why, how)引导的疑问句。

##### 1. 含 be 动词的特殊疑问句

(1) 特殊疑问词+ was/were+主语+其他?

How was your trip to Beijing? 你的北京之旅过得怎么样?

Why were you so happy just now? 刚才你们为什么那么高兴?

(2) 特殊疑问词(主语)+ was/were +其他?

Who was the girl you met last night? 昨晚你遇到的女孩是谁?

Whose bag was left here yesterday? 昨天谁的包落在这儿?

##### 2. 含行为动词的特殊疑问句

(1) 特殊疑问词+ 助动词 did+主语+动词原形+其他?

Where did you go yesterday afternoon. 昨天下午你去哪儿了?

When did you leave the room? 你是什么时候离开这房间的?

(2) 特殊疑问词(主语)+行为动词的过去式+其他?

Who didn't know it. 谁不知道这事。

#### 【活用】

① Gina played the piano last night. (对画线部分提问)

\_\_\_\_\_ Gina \_\_\_\_\_ last night?

② Mike found out the answer first.

\_\_\_\_\_ out the answer first? (对画线部分提问)

③ My parents went to Nanning yesterday. (对画线部分提问)

\_\_\_\_\_ your parents go yesterday?



## \*知识辨析

## 辨析 1: as 作为; 当作

(1) as 作介词时意为“作为”，其后多接表示职业、职务、用途、作用之类的名词。

例如：

He works as a worker. 他作为一名工人而工作。

I used one of my shoes as a hammer. 我拿我的一只鞋当锤子使。

(2) as 还可以作连词，意为“像”、“按照……的方式”，其后多接从句或介词短语。

例如：

All the six students do as the teacher says. 所有这六个学生都按照老师说的做。

(3) as 意为“在……期间”，“当……的时候”时，引导时间状语从句。

You will grow wiser as you grow older.

(4) as 意为“既然”，“由于”时，引导原因状语从句。

As it's raining, let's just stay at home.

## 【活用】

- ① After college, Mary got a job \_\_\_\_\_ a teacher.  
A. for                      B. by                      C. about                      D. as
- ② \_\_\_\_\_ you are late for the class, you should say “sorry” to the teacher.  
A. in                      B. to                      C. as                      D. of
- ③ When in Rome, do \_\_\_\_\_ the Romans do.  
A. in                      B. as                      C. to                      D. for

## 辨析 2: tired

(1) tired 形容词，意为“疲倦的，疲劳的，累的”，be tired of 意为“对……厌烦”。tired 的反义词是 tireless，意为“不知疲倦的”。例如：

He looks tired today. 他今天看起来很累。

She was tired of watching TV. 她看电视看得厌倦了。

(2) 拓展：tiring 指“令人困倦的，使人疲劳的，累人的”。例如：

It was a long tiring day. 这一天让人感到又累又长。

## 【活用】

- ① We were \_\_\_\_\_ after the long \_\_\_\_\_ running.  
A. tiring; tiring                      B. tiring; tired  
C. tired; tired                      D. tired; tiring

完成句子

② Mary 厌烦玩电脑游戏。

Mary \_\_\_\_\_ playing computer games.

### 辨析 3: stay

(1) stay 不及物动词，意为“停留，逗留”，后常接介词短语表示停留的地点。

stay up 意为“熬夜；不睡觉”；stay up late 意为“熬夜，睡的很晚”。例如：

It's raining outside, so we have to stay at home.

外面正在下雨，因此我们不得不呆在家里。

Do you often stay up? 你经常熬夜吗？

(2) stay 可以做系动词，意为“维持，保持”，其后常接形容词作表语。例如：

The weather will stay fine for several days. 天气将持续几天晴朗。

(3) stay 可以作名词，意为“停留、逗留”。例如：

During my stay in Beijing, I had a good time. 我在北京逗留期间玩得很高兴。

#### 【活用】

① 别整天待在家里。

Don't \_\_\_\_\_ home all day.

② 昨晚我熬夜备课。

I \_\_\_\_\_ to prepare for my class last night.

### 辨析 4: shout

(1) shout 作动词，意为“呼喊（叫），大声说，叫嚷”。shout at 意为“冲……大声嚷”，方式比较粗鲁；shout to 意为“朝……喊”，常因为距离远或者周围嘈杂而喊，目的让对方听见。例如：

She shouted at the old man. 她大声呵斥那老人。

He shouted to the old man. 他大声向那老人喊。

(2) 名词，意为“呼喊，叫喊”。例如：

What a terrible shout! 多可怕的叫喊声！

#### 【活用】

① She shouted \_\_\_\_\_ (to/at) him to let him hear.

② Don't shout \_\_\_\_\_ (to/at) her, she is just a small child.

### 辨析 5: surprise

(1) surprise 作名词，意为“惊奇，惊讶，惊喜”，作抽象名词时通常不可数，也可以具体化变为可数名词；get a surprise 意为“吃惊”。例如：

He gave me a surprise by arriving early. 他的早到让我吃惊。

常用短语：in surprise 惊讶地；to one's surprise 让某人惊讶的是；get a surprise 吃惊。

(2) surprise 作动词，意为“使……吃惊/震惊”，后面常接人作宾语（surprise sb.）。例如：

The news surprised us greatly. 这条消息使我们大为吃惊。

(3) surprised 作形容词，“吃惊的” be surprised to do sth.

I was surprised to see him there. 我真想不到会在哪儿见到他。

(4) surprising 也是形容词,“使人吃惊的”(与 surprised 的区别是 surprising 对象是物体本身令人吃惊,是物体的属性)

The result is surprising. 结果是令人惊讶的。

【活用】

- ① We looked at each other \_\_\_\_\_ when we heard a bird singing songs.  
A. in surprise                                      B. for surprise  
C. to surprise                                       D. of surprise
- ② \_\_\_\_\_ , people here drink tea with milk.  
A. In surprise                                        B. To my surprise  
C. In my surprise                                  D. To surprise

辨析 6: so...that...如此……以至于……

I was so scared that I couldn't move. 我是如此害怕以至于我一动都不敢动。

She is so fat that she can't move. 她太胖了以至于不能行动。

知识拓展:

- (1) 句中 so 为程度副词, 意为“如此, 那么”, 修饰形容词和副词。
- (2) 当 so...that...结构中的 that 从句是否定句时, 常可以转换为含有 too...to 结构的简单句。

She is so young that she can't go to school.=She is too young to go to school.

## 【活用】

- ① —How do you like the film?  
—It's \_\_\_\_\_ exciting \_\_\_\_\_ I'd like to see it again.  
A. too; to                      B. so; that                      C. such; that                      D. too; too
- ② The story book is \_\_\_\_\_ interesting \_\_\_\_\_ I can't put it down  
A. so; that                      B. too; to                      C. such; that                      D. very; that

## 句型转换

- ② He is so fat that he can't wear that small shirt. (改为同义句)  
He is \_\_\_\_\_ fat \_\_\_\_\_ wear that small shirt.

## ☆达标检测

### 一、用所给词的适当形式填空

1. We went \_\_\_\_\_(camp) last month.
2. There are a lot of \_\_\_\_\_(visit) in Guilin.
3. Everyone was very\_\_\_\_\_ (surprise) at the news.
4. Jim is much too \_\_\_\_\_ (tire) after hard work.
5. Did you \_\_\_\_\_(stay) up late yesterday?
6. How many \_\_\_\_\_(sheep) are there on the farm?

7. Last Summer, we \_\_\_\_\_(visit)our teacher and \_\_\_\_\_(have) a good time.
8. There \_\_\_\_\_(be) telephone call for you two minutes ago.
9. She \_\_\_\_\_(see) an old man in the house when he came in.
10. What \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ (do) last night?

## 二、完成句子

1. 你不能向妈妈大喊大叫。  
You can't \_\_\_\_\_ your mother.
2. 人们喜欢在春天放风筝。  
People like to \_\_\_\_\_ in spring.
3. 上周末他们做什么了？他们做作业和购物了。  
What \_\_\_\_\_ they \_\_\_\_\_ weekend?  
They \_\_\_\_\_ homework and \_\_\_\_\_.
4. 这个箱子是如此的沉，以至于我搬不动它。  
The box is \_\_\_\_\_ I can't move it.
5. He found some meat in the fridge（冰箱）.（变一般疑问句）  
\_\_\_\_\_ he \_\_\_\_\_ meat in the fridge?
6. John played the guitar last weekend.（就画线部分提问）  
\_\_\_\_\_ Gina \_\_\_\_\_ last weekend?
7. My brother bought a car yesterday morning.（对画线部分提问）  
\_\_\_\_\_ a car yesterday morning?
8. My family visited Gangzhou last summer.（就画线部分提问）  
\_\_\_\_\_ your family \_\_\_\_\_ last summer?
9. Our weekend was great.（对画线部分提问）  
\_\_\_\_\_ your weekend?
10. I played basketball on Sunday morning.（对画线部分提问）  
\_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ basketball?

## 三、单项选择

1. —Who cleaned the room just now?  
—Mary\_\_\_\_\_.  
A. was                      B. does                      C. is                      D. did
2. \_\_\_\_\_ you often go to the park? No, but I \_\_\_\_\_ last week.  
A. Do, go                      B. Did, went                      C. Do, did                      D. Did, do
3. My sister often \_\_\_\_\_ to school early, but this morning she \_\_\_\_\_ to school late .  
A. go; went                      B. went; goes                      C. goes; went                      D. goes; goes
4. Peter had classes this morning, but Tony \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. isn't                      B. wasn't                      C. doesn't                      D. didn't
5. —\_\_\_\_\_ you busy this morning?  
—Yes, I helped my mother clean the house .

- A. Were            B. Was            C. Did            D. Are
6. —What did they do last weekend?  
—They \_\_\_\_\_ in the park.  
A. went a boat            B. went to a boat            C. went boating            D. took boating
7. Last weekend I didn't \_\_\_\_\_ my uncle .  
A. visited            B. saw            C. visit            D. see
8. Tommy \_\_\_\_\_ very late last night .  
A. stayed up            B. sat down            C. woke up            D. put down
9. I \_\_\_\_\_ to Hangzhou last week.  
A. flew            B. flyed            C. flied            D. flies
10. —\_\_\_\_\_ did you go to the Ningbo?  
—Last summer.  
A. Where            B. What            C. Who            D. When
11. —\_\_\_\_\_ was your vacation?  
—Fantastic !  
A. What            B. Where            C. How            D. When
12. \_\_\_\_\_ was the weather like yesterday?  
A. How            B. What            C. What a            D. How a
13. —\_\_\_\_\_?  
—She played the piano .  
A. What does Betty do            B. What did Betty do  
C. What is Betty doing            D. Where was Betty
14. We don't know \_\_\_\_\_ next.  
A. how to do            B. what to do            C. what to do it            D. where to do
15. —\_\_\_\_\_?  
—Very boring.  
A. When did you go there            B. What did you do yesterday  
C. How was your weekend            D. Where did you go this morning
16. —\_\_\_\_\_ did he go last weekend?  
—The beach.  
A. What            B. How            C. When            D. Where
17. The film was \_\_\_\_\_ but \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. interested; scared            B. interested; scary  
C. interesting; scared            D. interesting; scary
18. It is dangerous to \_\_\_\_\_ a tent by the river on cloudy days.  
A. put up            B. stand up            C. get up            D. give up
19. Don't \_\_\_\_\_. He is too tired .  
A. wake him up            B. wake her up            C. wake up him            D. wake up her
20. Mike was very angry with his brother, so he \_\_\_\_\_ him.

- A. shouted                      B. shouted to                      C. shouted with                      D. shouted at
21. The mouse \_\_\_\_\_ when I came in .  
A. ran away                      B. in running                      C. run away                      D. runs away
22. Could you tell me something about your \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
A. live habit                      B. living habits                      C. life habit                      D. life habits
23. How many \_\_\_\_\_ did you see on the farm?  
A. sheeps                      B. sheep                      C. cow                      D. chicken
24. —Did you have a good holiday?  
—Yes ,it was good. But I was kind of \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. interested                      B. happy                      C. tired                      D. excited
25. Sorry, Mis.Li I \_\_\_\_\_ my homework yesterday.  
A. forget doing                      B. forget to do                      C. forgot doing                      D. forgot to do
26. I can see two \_\_\_\_\_ and three \_\_\_\_\_ in the picture.  
A. cows; sheeps                      B. cows; sheep                      C. cow; sheep                      D. cow; sheeps
27. Many \_\_\_\_\_ come to \_\_\_\_\_ the Great Wall every year.  
A. visits; visit                      B. visitors; visits                      C. visitors; visit                      D. visits; visits
28. The little boy was \_\_\_\_\_ scared that he cried.  
A. very                      B. too                      C. so                      D. much
29. \_\_\_\_\_ your parents at home last night?  
A. Were                      B. Are                      C. Was                      D. Is
30. When I saw my middle school teacher again, we all got \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. surprise                      B. a surprise                      C. an surprise                      D. surprising

#### 四、完形填空

John worked in an office in a small town. One day his boss   1   him, “John, I want you to go to London, and to   2   Mr. Black. Here’s the address. His office is near the station.”

John went to London   3   train. He left the station and thought, “The office isn’t   4   the station. I’ll find it   5  .”

But after an hour he was still looking for it, so he stopped and asked an old woman. She said, “Just go along this street, turn left   6   the end, and it’s the   7   building on the right.” John went and found it.

  8   days later, John went to the same city,   9   again he couldn’t find the office, so he asked someone the way. It was   10   old woman! She was very surprised and said, “Are you still looking for that place? ”

1. A. said                      B. said to                      C. talked to                      D. spoke  
2. A. see                      B. watch                      C. look                      D. found  
3. A. on                      B. by                      C. with                      D. in  
4. A. next to                      B. near                      C. far from                      D. in front of  
5. A. easy                      B. easily                      C. slowly                      D. early

- |                  |           |                  |             |
|------------------|-----------|------------------|-------------|
| 6. A. by         | B. to     | C. at            | D. on       |
| 7. A. five       | B. twelve | C. third         | D. twenty   |
| 8. A. Much       | B. A few  | C. A little      | D. A lot    |
| 9. A. because    | B. when   | C. but           | D. so       |
| 10. A. different | B. same   | C. the different | D. the same |

## 五、阅读理解

## (A)

阅读短文，选择正确答案。

## Tony's Sunday

Tony got up at eight o'clock and then had his breakfast. His mother cooked his favorite food-chicken noodles for him. After breakfast, Tony began to do his homework. He didn't have too much homework, because teachers wanted them to have a good rest during weekends. At thirty past nine, Tony read his favorite book Harry Potter. It was really a great book. After that, he listened to Jay's songs. At eleven, he went to his friend Mike's party at KFC. They were very happy because they ate their favorite food- hamburgers. Lunch was over at about one thirty in the afternoon. Then they all went to see a new movie. This was Tony's Sunday. He really had a good time.

- What food did Tony like best? \_\_\_\_\_  
A. Milk and eggs      B. Egg noodles.      C. Chicken noodles
- When did Tony read his favorite book? \_\_\_\_\_  
A. At 9:30 am.      B. At 9:00 am.      C. At 8:30 am.
- Tony and all his friends all liked \_\_\_\_\_ best.  
A. vegetables      B. fruit      C. hamburgers
- What did Tony and his best friend do after lunch? \_\_\_\_\_  
A. They went to KFC.  
B. They listened to Jay's songs .  
C. They watched a movie.
- Which of the following is true? \_\_\_\_\_  
A. Tony had too much homework.  
B. Tony's favorite book is Harry Potter.  
C. Tony went to Mike's party at 9:00.

## (B)

New York City "If you love somebody, send him to New York for it's Heaven(天堂); if you hate somebody, also send him to New York for it's Hell (地狱)." This is a famous line (台词) from the TV play Beijingers in New York in 1990s. Many people learned a lot about New York City from the TV play. As the biggest city in America, New York is the biggest centre of the finance (金融), trade (贸易) and culture (文化) of the country. It's an important centre for

international affairs（国际事务）because the headquarters（总部）of the UN（联合国）are also here. When you think of New York, what comes to your mind first? Broadway（百老汇）, Times Square, Central Park, Wall Street or the Statue of Liberty? Different people will give different answers. However, few people will think of its nickname（昵称）— “the big Apple”. Why do people call New York “the big Apple”? There are different stories about that. Which one is true? No New Yorkers seem to care about it. They are happy to be able to have a real taste（品尝）of the exciting（精彩的）“Apple”.

判断正误，正确写“T”，错误写“F”

1. Many Chinese people didn't know New York City in 1990s.
2. New York is the biggest city in the USA.
3. The headquarters of the UN are in New York.
4. The Statue of Liberty is not in New York.
5. There is only one story about the New York's nickname—“the big apple”.

## 六、书面表达

### 1. 句子翻译

(1) 我度过了一个忙碌而有趣的周末。

(2) 昨天晚上你做什么呢？

(3) 我太累了以至于我早早地睡了。

(4) 她太小了而不能单独一个人待在家。（单独地：alone）

(5) 在上海看到彼此我们很惊讶。

### 2. 短文写作

(1)

今天，你和你的朋友去离家不远的河心小岛进行了一次野餐。请根据提示词写一篇词数在 60~80 之间的日记。要求表达准确，语意完整，语法正确。

注意：

1. 开头已经为你写好；
2. 提示词：island, far, middle, early, boat, sing, dance, lunch, football, late, tired, happy, wonderful

范文：

Saturday, May 5th Fine

Today, I went to the small island not far from my home with my friends. It's in the middle of the river. We had a picnic there.

We got up very early in the morning. We went to the island by boat. First, we sang and



danced. Then we had our lunch. After that, we played football. We went home very late. Though we were very tired, we still felt happy.

What a wonderful picnic we had today!

(2)

根据下面提示，模仿写作。

前天是星期天，Sandra 上午做作业、打扫屋子；中午因爸妈不在家，自己做了一大碗西红柿面吃；下午去看了奶奶，并帮奶奶洗了衣服；晚上陪奶奶一起看电视。Sandra 度过了忙碌的一天，感到有点累。假如你是 Sandra，请给你的好朋友 Sally 写一封信，告诉她你是如何度过周日的。60 词左右（开头和结尾已给出，不计入总词数）。

☆成篇

Dear Sally,

How's it going? I had a busy Sunday. In the morning, I did my homework. After that, I began to clean my room. My parents were not at home. So I cooked tomato noodles for lunch. I had a large bowl. In the afternoon, I went to visit my grandmother. I helped her wash her clothes and I watched TV with her at night. I was a little tired.

Yours, Sandra



# 综 合 篇

## ►►►► Unit 1 Where did you go on vacation?

### \*知识清单

语言目标	谈论过去做的事情	
Section A	单词	anyone <i>pron.</i> 任何人    anywhere <i>adv.</i> 在任何地方    wonderful <i>adj.</i> 精彩的 something <i>pron.</i> 某事；某物    anything <i>pron.</i> 任何事    nothing <i>pron.</i> 没有什么 everyone <i>pron.</i> 每人；人人    few <i>adj.</i> 不多；很少(后接可数名词复数)    hen <i>n.</i> 母鸡 seem <i>v.</i> 好像；似乎    bored <i>adj.</i> 厌倦的；烦闷的(人的情绪) → boring (人、物具有的特质)    someone <i>pron.</i> 某人    diary <i>n.</i> 日记    many <i>adj.</i> 很多(后加可数名词复数) → more (比较级) → most (最高级)    much <i>adj.</i> 很多(后加不可数名词) → more (比较级) → most (最高级)    my → myself (我自己；我本人)    your → Yourself (你自己，你本人，单数) → yourselves (你们自己；你们本人，复数)
	短语	quite a few 相当多；不少    most of ……中的大部分    of course 当然；自然    keep a diary 写日记
	句型	(1) —Where did you go on vacation? 你去哪里度假? —I went to New York city. 我去纽约市。 (2) —Did you go out with anyone? 你和任何人出去吗? —No. No one was here. Everyone was on vacation. 不。没有人在这。每个人都去度假了。 (3) —How was the food? 食物如何? —Everything tasted really good. 每样东西都很好吃。
Section B	单词	activity <i>n.</i> 活动    decide <i>v.</i> 决定；选定    try <i>v.</i> 尝试；设法 → try <i>n.</i> (have a try 试一下)    bicycle <i>n.</i> 自行车    building <i>n.</i> 建筑物；房子    trader <i>n.</i> 商人    wonder <i>v.</i> 想知道 top <i>n.</i> 顶部；表面    wait <i>v.</i> 等待；等候 (wait for, 等待……)    umbrella <i>n.</i> 伞；雨伞    wet <i>adj.</i> 湿的    below 在……下面    hungry <i>adj.</i> 饥饿的    hill <i>n.</i> 小山；山丘    duck <i>n.</i> 鸭    as 像……一样    enough <i>adj. &amp; adv.</i> 足够的(地)；充足的(地) enjoy <i>v.</i> → enjoyable <i>adj.</i> 有乐趣的    different <i>adj.</i> → difference <i>n.</i> 差别；差异    like <i>v. &amp; n.</i> → dislike <i>v. &amp; n.</i> 不喜爱(的事物)
	短语	feel like 给……的感觉；感受到(接动词-ing形式)    wait for 等候    because of 因为    the top of ……的顶部
	句型	(1) I wonder what life was like here in the past. 我想知道这里过去的生活是什么样子。 (2) And because of the bad weather, we couldn't see anything below. 因为天气不好，下面是什么我们什么都看不见。 (3) How did you feel about the trip? 你认为这次行程如何？
语法	(1) 复合不定代词    (2) 一般过去式	

\*语法精讲

一、复合不定代词

新知引导

根据要求补全下列句子，并体会不定代词的用法。

- 1. No one \_\_\_\_\_ (be) here. Everyone \_\_\_\_\_(be) on vacation.
- 2. —Did you buy \_\_\_\_\_ (一些特别的东西) ?  
— Yes, I bought \_\_\_\_\_ (某些东西) for my father.
- 3. Did \_\_\_\_\_ (每个人) have a good time?
- 4. Why didn't you buy \_\_\_\_\_ (什么东西) for yourself?
- 5. Did \_\_\_\_\_ (什么人) in the family go with you?

1. 复合不定代词是由 some-, any-, no-, every-加上-one, -body, -thing 等所组成的不定代词。复合不定代词包括 something, somebody, someone, anything, anybody, anyone, nothing, nobody, no one, everything, everybody, everyone 等十二个。

somebody 某人	anybody 任何人	nobody 没有人	everybody 每人
someone 某人	anyone 任何人	no one 没有人	everyone 每人
something 某事；某物	anything 任何事物	nothing 没有东西	everything 一切

2. 复合不定代词用法归纳：

基本句式用法	some-构成的复合不定代词常用于肯定句。Something 可以用于表示建议或委婉请求的疑问句。 There is someone waiting for (等待) you. 有人在等你。 Would you like something to eat? 你要吃点什么吗？
	any-构成的复合不定代词用于否定句和疑问句。 <b>Is there anything</b> interesting in the book? 这本书里有任何有趣的东西吗？ She <b>doesn't have anything</b> to share with us. 她没有任何东西与我们分享。
	No-构成的复合不定代词本身就是否定的意义，要与肯定的动词连用。 He <b>has nothing</b> to say. 他没有什么可以说的。
	由 some, any, no, every 构成的复合不定代词做主语时，谓语动词用 <b>单数</b> 第三人称单数形式。 <b>Everyone wants</b> to succeed (成功). 人人都想成功。 <b>No one is</b> late for class. 没有人上课迟到。
被修饰	不定代词若有定语修饰，定语要置于其后。 There is <b>something new</b> in his speech. 他的演讲中有一些新的内容。 There is <b>nothing interesting</b> in the book. 这本书里没有有趣的东西。

【活用】

- ① \_\_\_\_\_ in the restaurant tastes good. We often have dinner in it.  
A. Everything                      B. Some things                      C. Anything                      D. Nothing

② —Is there \_\_\_\_\_ in the newspaper?

—Sorry, there is \_\_\_\_\_.

A. something new; new nothing

B. new something; new nothing

C. anything new; nothing new

D. new anything; nothing new

③ Since \_\_\_\_\_（没有人）is watching TV now, please turn it off. 既然没人在看电视，那就把它关了。

④ Did you meet \_\_\_\_\_（什么有趣的人）on your trip?

⑤ —Did they go \_\_\_\_\_（什么特别的地方）yesterday?

—Not really. They just stayed at the hotel and watched TV because of the bad weather.

## 二、一般过去时态

### 新知引导

根据要求补全下列句子，并体会一般过去时态的用法。

① I \_\_\_\_\_ (be) on vacation last month.

② We \_\_\_\_\_ (take) quite a few photos there last week.

③ I just \_\_\_\_\_ (stay) at home most of the time to read and relax last weekend.

④ My father \_\_\_\_\_ (not bring) enough money, so we only had some bowls of rice and some fish.

⑤ —Did you \_\_\_\_\_ (see) Huangguoshu Waterfall?

—Yes, I \_\_\_\_\_.

### 【归纳】

1. 定义 表示过去某个时间发生的动作或存在的状态。常和表示过去的时间状语连用，如：last year, yesterday, 2days ag, long long ago, just now（刚才）等；也可表示过去经常反复发生的动作。

2. 过去的时间状语作为标志词：

① **yesterday** 或以其构成的短语：yesterday morning(afternoon, evening)等；

② 由“**last+一时间名词**”构成的短语：last night, last year (winter, month, week)等；

③ 由“**时间段+ago**”构成的短语：a moment ago, a short time ago, an hour ago 等；

④ 其它：**just now** 等；

⑤ 由某些表示**过去时态的从句**等。

3. 谓语动词常用过去式

规则动词一般过去时的变化规则

一般在动词原形末尾加-ed	look	looked
结尾是 e 的动词加 -d	live	lived
末尾只有一个辅音字母重读闭音节词的，先双写这个辅音字母，再加-ed	stop plan	stopped planned
结尾是辅音字母+y 的动词，先变-y 为-i 再加-ed	study	studied

3. 一般过去时常用的时间状语有: yesterday, last week, two days ago, just now, in 2016 等等。

#### 4. 句式结构

句式	be 动词的一般过去时构成		其他实义动词的一般过去时构成	
肯定式	I was a student. He/She/Mary was a student. It was Peter. We/You/They were workers.	主 语 +was/were+ 其他	I worked. He/She/It worked. We/You/They worked.	主 语 +行为动 词 (过去式) +其他
疑问式	Was I a student? Was he/she/Mary a student? Was it Peter? Were we/you/they workers?	Was/were+ 主 语 + 其他	Did I work? Did he/she/it work? Did we/you/they work?	Did+ 主 语 +动 词原形+其他
否定式	I was not a student. He/She/Mary wasn't a student. It wasn't Peter. We/You/They weren't workers.	主 语 +was/were+ not+其他	I didn't work. He/She/It didn't work. We/You/They didn't work.	主 语 +didn't+ 动词原形+其 他
疑 问 否 定 式	Was I not a student? Was he/she/Mary not a student? 或 Wasn't he/she/Mary a student? Was it not Peter? Were we/you/they not workers?		Did I not work? 或 Didn't I work? Did he/she/it not work? Did we/you/they not work?	

#### 【活用】

##### I. 写出下列动词的过去式

1. watch \_\_\_\_\_ 2. arrive \_\_\_\_\_ 3. shop \_\_\_\_\_  
4. worry \_\_\_\_\_ 5. see \_\_\_\_\_ 6. drink \_\_\_\_\_

##### II. 句型转换

1. Lucy visited the zoo yesterday. (改为否定句)

Lucy \_\_\_\_\_ the zoo last Sunday.

2. The Greens went to the beach on vacation last weekend. (改为一般疑问句)

\_\_\_\_\_ the Greens \_\_\_\_\_ to the beach on vacation last weekend?

3. My parents were really busy yesterday. (改为一般疑问句)

\_\_\_\_\_ your parents really \_\_\_\_\_ yesterday?

4. Kate studied for exams last Friday. (对画线部分提问)

\_\_\_\_\_ Kate \_\_\_\_\_ last Friday?

5. My sister played basketball with her classmates yesterday afternoon. (对画线部分提问)

\_\_\_\_\_ your sister \_\_\_\_\_ basketball with \_\_\_\_\_ yesterday afternoon?

### \*知识辨析

辨析 1: something *pron.* 某事；某物

※I bought something for my father. 我为爸爸买了一些东西。

※There is something wrong with my bike. 我的自行车有毛病。

※There's nothing important in today's newspaper. 今天的报纸上没有什么重要的信息。

【归纳】something, anything, nothing 的异同点

相同点	均为不定代词，做主语是， <b>谓语动词用第三人称单数</b>
	若有定语修饰，定语要置于 <b>其后</b>
不同点	something 多用于肯定句；anything 多用于否定句、疑问句；nothing 本身表示否定

【拓展】

① something 可用于表示请求、建议或征求意见的疑问句。

Would you like something to eat? 你想喝点东西吗？

② anything 可用于肯定句，表示“任何事物”。

Just ring if you need anything. 如果需要什么东西，你就按门铃。

【活用】

① I'm very busy. I have \_\_\_\_\_ important to do this afternoon.

A. anything                      B. something                      C. everything                      D. nothing

② My sister is free. She doesn't have \_\_\_\_\_ to do this afternoon.

A. anything                      B. something                      C. everything                      D. nothing

③ Mike has \_\_\_\_\_ to do now. He is free. Let's ask him to go swimming with us.

A. anything                      B. something                      C. everything                      D. nothing

辨析 2: myself *pron.* 我自己；我本人

※I bought something for my parents, but nothing for **myself**. 我为父母买了些东西，但是没人为自己买东西。

※I teach **myself** English. 我自学英语。

※I learned to ride bike by **myself**. 我自己学会骑自行车。

※Help **yourself** to some soup. 请随便喝些汤。

※Did you enjoy **yourself** last night? 昨天晚上你玩得开心吗？

【归纳】

反身代词 oneself

enjoy oneself= have a good time 玩得高兴；过得愉快

by oneself 独立、独自 I do the homework by myself.

dress oneself 自己穿衣服



make yourself at home (客气语) 像自己家一样; 不用客气

look after oneself 照看自己 (look after myself, look after ourselves, look after yourself, look after yourselves, look after herself, look after himself, look after themselves)

help oneself (反身代词) to something 随便吃; 自用 (食物等)

### 【拓展】反身代词

单复数	my/our	your	him/her/it/them
单数 self	myself	yourself	himself herself itself
复数 selves	ourselves	yourselves	themselves

### 【活用】

- ① My sister is twenty years old. She can look after \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. she                      B. her                      C. hers                      D. herself
- ② Nobody taught me English. I learned it by \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. I                          B. my                      C. mine                      D. myself
- ③ I bought something \_\_\_\_\_ my parents. But \_\_\_\_\_ for myself.  
A. to; anything              B. for; nothing              C. for; anything              D. to; something
- ④ Girls, help \_\_\_\_\_ to some fruit. It's just behind you.  
A. you                      B. yourself                  C. your                      D. yourselves
- ⑤ Helen, please help \_\_\_\_\_ to some bread. It's delicious.  
A. you                      B. yourself                  C. your                      D. yourselves
- ⑥ All of us enjoyed \_\_\_\_\_ at the party last night.  
A. us                          B. our                      C. myself                      D. ourselves

辨析 3: seem v. 似乎; 好像; 看来

※ Still no one **seemed** to be bored. 似乎没有人感到厌倦。(seem+to do sth.: 似乎/好像做某事)

※ The old man **seems** very happy. 这位老人看起来很健康。(seem+形容词: 似乎是……; 好像……)

※ It **seems** that you are very happy. 看起来你很高兴。(It seems/seemed that 从句: 看起来好像……)

### 【活用】

She seems worried about her son. (改为同义句)

She seems \_\_\_\_\_ about her son.

It \_\_\_\_\_ she is worried about her son.

辨析 4: bored adj. 厌倦的; 烦闷的

※ Still no one seemed to be **bored**. 似乎没有人感到厌倦。

※ The story is very **boring**. 这个故事太无聊了。

※ I think history is **boring**, so I always feel **bored** when having history.

我认为历史无聊,所以在历史课上我总感到无聊。

【归纳】bored 和 boring

boring 是形容词, bored 也是形容词, 不同之处是 bored 是指使人感到厌烦的, boring 是指事情本身无趣的, 当形容人时用 bored, 形容事物时用 boring。其实就像 interested 和 interesting 的用法一样, 例如:

It was so boring. I am bored! 这件事情真没趣。我感到很无聊!

Doing the boring homework makes me bored. 做这些无聊的作业让我感到厌倦。

【拓展】类似的词: interesting (有趣的) → interested (感兴趣的); relaxing (令人轻松的) → relaxed (感到轻松的); exciting (令人兴奋的) → excited (感到兴奋的); surprising (令人惊奇的) → surprised (感到惊奇的)。

【活用】

① I don't like the movie because it is really \_\_\_\_\_.

A. bored                      B. boring                      C. interesting                      D. exciting

② 大多数女生对足球不感兴趣。

Most of the girls aren't \_\_\_\_\_ in soccer.

③ It is \_\_\_\_\_ (放松的) to listen to music.

辨析 5: How did you like it?

How do you like...? 意为“你觉得……怎么样?”用来询问对方的观点和看法,相当于 What do you think of ...? 或 How do you feel about...?

How do you like your new job? = How do you feel about your new job? = What do you think of your new job?

你觉得你的新工作如何?

【活用】

—The documentary *A Bite of China II* is quite popular around China. How do you like it?

—\_\_\_\_\_.

A. I think so                      B. Pretty good                      C. It's my pleasure                      D. All right

辨析 6: expensive adj. 昂贵的

※ Her mother bought an expensive watch for her. 她的妈妈为她买了一块昂贵的手表。

※ The shoes in this store are very cheap. 这个商店里的鞋子很便宜。

※ The price of the house is still high at present. 目前房价仍然很高。

※ The price of some farm products is a little low now. 现状某些农产品的价格有点儿低。

【归纳】

(1) expensive 的反义词是 cheap “便宜的; 廉价的”。expensive 或 cheap 用来描述物品的价格。

(2) price 意为“价格”时, 只能用 high 表示价格高, 用 low 表示价格低。

## 【活用】

- ① Her skirt is very \_\_\_\_\_ and she spent much money on it.  
A. high                      B. low                      C. expensive                      D. cheap
- ② The price of these things is a little high. (改为同义句)  
The things \_\_\_\_\_ a little \_\_\_\_\_ .

## 辨析 7: decide v. 决定

※It was sunny and hot, so we **decided** to go to the beach near our hotel.

天气晴朗炎热，所以我们决定去旅馆附近的海滩。

※We must **decide** which one to buy. 我们一定要定下来买哪一个。

## 【归纳】

(1) 表示“决定做某事”，其后要接不定式，不能接动名词。例如：

They decided to delay (推迟) the meeting. 他们决定把会议推迟。

She decided to call his office. 她决定给他办公室打电话。

若要接名词或动名词，应先接介词 on (但不如用不定式结构常见)。例如：

Betty decided **on** the red skirt. 贝蒂选定了那条红裙子。

They decide **on** flying kites. 他们决定放风筝。

(2) 表示“决定不做某事”，可用 decide not to do 或 decide against doing。例如：

他决定不换工作。

He decide **not to change** his job. = He decide **against changing** his job.

他们已决定不搬到伦敦。

They have decided **not to move** to London. = They have decided **against moving** to London.

(3) decide 的名词形式为 decision，结构：make a decision，意为“做决定”。例如：

He has made a decision. 他已经做一个决定了。

(4) decide 后接“疑问词+不定式”结构作宾语。例如：

I haven't decide **what to eat** for lunch.

## 【活用】

- ① Jerry decided \_\_\_\_\_ an online shop (网店) after graduating (毕业) from school.  
A. open                      B. opening                      C. to open                      D. opened
- ② —Have you decided \_\_\_\_\_ to the mountains?  
—Not yet. It depends on the weather.  
A. why to go                      B. when to go                      C. where to go                      D. who to go

## 辨析 8: try v. &amp; n. 尝试；设法；努力

※My sister and I **tried paragliding**. 姐姐和我尝试了滑翔伞运动。

※Please **try to eat** more vegetables. It's good for your health. 请尽量多吃一些蔬菜，对你的健康有好处。

※If you have difficulties, please let me know. I will **try my best to** help you.

如果你有困难，告诉我，我会尽力帮助你。

※Try on the shoes before you buy them. 买鞋前要先穿上试试。

※**Have a try** again, you will do better. 再试一次，你会做得更好。

Try 构成的固定搭配：

(1) Try one's best to do sth. 尽某人最大努力去做某事（one's 要换成形容词性物主代词：my, our, your, her, his, its, their）。

(2) Try on 试穿（Try it on; Try them on）。

(3) Have a try 尝试，try 在这里是名词。

### 【归纳】

(1) try doing sth. 尝试做某事，表示一种尝试、做做看的想法，不一定付出很多努力。

I tried knocking at the back door, but nobody answered. 我试着敲了敲后门，但没人回答。

(2) try to do sth. 尽力、设法去做某事，表示想尽一切办法要把事情办成，强调付出努力设法去完成。

I'm trying to learn English well. 我决心（尽力）学好英语。

### 【活用】

① 我试着给他打电话，但没有人接听。

I \_\_\_\_\_ him, but no one answered.

② 我正尽力把英语学好。

He is \_\_\_\_\_ English well.

③ 昨天你试穿那双鞋子了吗？

Did you \_\_\_\_\_ the shoes yesterday?

④She always tried \_\_\_\_\_ (she) best to help me out.

辨析 9: enough adj. & adv.

※ My father didn't bring **enough money**... 我爸爸没带足够的钱……。

※It's **warm enough** in the room.

拓展：bring 与 take

bring 意为“带来；拿来”，指从别处带到说话者所在地。Bring the desks here.

take 意为“拿走；带走”，指从说话者所在地带到别处去。Take the chairs there.

### 【归纳】

1) enough 作形容词，意为“足够的，充分的”。修饰名词作定语时，通常置于所修饰名词的前面。We have **enough time** to do our homework.

2) enough 作副词，意为“足够地；充分地”，修饰形容词或副词时，一般置于被修饰词之后。The box is **big enough**.

### 【活用】

① This movie wasn't \_\_\_\_\_. I fell asleep（睡着）half way through it.

A. interesting enough

B. enough interesting

C. interested enough

D. enough interested

② 不要担心，我们有足够的时间和钱。

Don't worry. We have \_\_\_\_\_.

辨析 10: feel like 给……的感觉；感受到

※I **felt like** I was a bird. It was so exciting! 我感觉自己就像一只小鸟。太刺激了!※Do you **feel like** a cup of tea now? 你现在想喝杯茶吗?※Do you **feel like** taking a walk in the park with me? 你想跟我在公园散步吗?

## 【归纳】

(1) feel like 意为“给……的感觉；感受到”。其后常接从句。

He feels like he is swimming. 他感觉像在游泳一样。

(2) feel like 还可意为“想要……”，其后可接名词、代词或动名词。

即: feel like sth. 想要某; feel like doing sth. 想要做某事。

## 【活用】

① 我感觉我像在做梦。I \_\_\_\_\_ I am dreaming.

② He feels like \_\_\_\_\_ (drink) some water.

③ 他们两个谁也不想回去睡觉。Neither of them felt \_\_\_\_\_ back to sleep.

## 拓展: exciting 与 excited

exciting 意为“令人兴奋的，使人激动的”，一般修饰某物。excited 意为“感到兴奋的，激动的”，一般修饰某人。例如：

The story is **exciting**. 这是一个振奋人心的故事。He told me the **exciting** news. 他告诉我这个激动的消息。Sarah was **excited** to see the singer. 看见这个歌手，Sarah 感到很激动。

## 辨析 11: because of 因为

※And **because of** the bad weather, we couldn't see anything below.

而且因为坏天气，我们也没能看到下面的任何景色。

※I don't want to watch TV **because** I have something important to do.

我不愿意看电视因为我有重要的事情要做。

## 【归纳】because of 与 because

(1) because of 是介词短语，意为“因为，由于”，后可接名词、代词或动名词，不能接句子。

He lost his job **because of** his age.

(2) because 意为“因为”，引导状语从句，即接句子。

I didn't buy the shirt **because** it was too expensive.

【活用】

① —Did you have a sports meeting last week?

—No, we didn't. It was put off (被推迟) \_\_\_\_\_ the heavy rain.

A. because of                  B. because                  C. so                  D. instead of

② He was late for school this morning \_\_\_\_\_ he missed the school bus.

A. because of                  B. because                  C. instead                  D. instead of

辨析 12: forget v. (过去式) forgot 忘记

※……because we forgot to bring an umbrella... 因为我们忘了带雨伞。

【归纳】forget to do sth. 与 forget doing sth.

forget to do sth. 意为“忘记要做某事(事情还没做)” Don't forget to close the window.

forget doing sth. 意为“忘记做过某事(事情已经做过了)” I forget closing the window.

【拓展】remember v. 记得, 用法与 forget 相似

remember to do sth. 意为“记得要做某事(事情还没做)” Remember to close the window.

remember doing sth. 意为“记得做过某事(事情已经做过了)” I remember closing the window.

【活用】

① 我记得他告诉过我这件事。

I remember him \_\_\_\_\_ about it.

② 他记得他的父亲告诉过他这个故事。

He remember his father \_\_\_\_\_ the story.

③ 我永远不会忘记等着炸弹掉下来的时刻。

I'll never forget \_\_\_\_\_ bombs (炸弹) to fall.

I'll always remember \_\_\_\_\_ bombs to fall.

辨析 13: dislike v. & n. 不喜爱(的事物); 厌恶(的事物)

※Do you **dislike** anything? 你有不喜欢的事吗?

※I **dislike** playing chess. 我不喜欢下棋。=I don't like playing chess.=I hate playing chess.

※Tell us about your likes and **dislikes**. 和我们谈谈你喜欢和不喜欢的事吧。

【归纳】

(1) dislike 通常只用作及物动词, 其后跟名词、代词或动词-ing 形式。同义词是 hate。

(2) dislike 用作名词, 表示“不喜欢”、“讨厌”, 注意区别两个短语的搭配:

a. have(show) a dislike for (of)不喜欢, 讨厌。如: I have a dislike for (of) cats. 我不喜欢猫。

b. take a dislike to 不喜欢, 讨厌。如: He takes a dislike to her. 他不喜欢她。

## 【活用】

- ① Everyone has his likes and \_\_\_\_\_ (dislike).  
 ② My brother likes going to school by bike but dislikes \_\_\_\_\_ (walk) to school.  
 ③ I dislike \_\_\_\_\_ (play) cards for money.

辨析 14: My classmates told me to keep going, so I went on. 我的同学告诉我坚持往前走, 因此我便继续前进了。

keep doing sth.==keep(on) doing sth. 意为“继续做某事, 一直做某事”, 介词 on 可以省略。Keep 为动词, 意为“保持; 使保持某种状态”。

※Keep (on) working hard, and you will succeed. 坚持努力, 你会成功的。

※Don't keep talking about it. 不要总谈这件事。

## 【归纳】keep 的其他用法

(1) keep + 形容词

I exercise every day to keep healthy. Keep silent(沉默的)!

还有: Keep quiet (安静的)! Keep calm (冷静的)!

(2) keep+sth/sb + 形容词

We must keep the classroom clean (干净的). 我们必须保持教室干净。

(3) keep (on)+doing 一直做某事

He kept helping me with my English. 他一直帮我学习英语。

(4) keep ... from doing ... 阻止做某事……

We must keep the children from swimming in the river. 我们必须阻止孩子们在河里游泳。

(5) keep a pet 饲养一个宠物

【拓展】tell(ask) sb. (not) to do sth. 意为“告诉某人(不要)做某事”。

The teacher **told us to clean** the window just now. 老师刚才叫我们擦窗户。

The old man **asked me not to stand up**. 这位老人叫我不站起来。

## 【活用】

① 昨晚她持续看了两个小时的电视。She \_\_\_\_\_ TV for two hours last night.

② 他让我等了半个小时。He kept me \_\_\_\_\_ for half an hour.

③ Please \_\_\_\_\_ (保持安静)。

④ 少说话, 多观察。

Please keep your mouth \_\_\_\_\_ and eyes \_\_\_\_\_.

A. shut; open

B. shutting; opening

C. shut; opening

D. shutting; open

## ☆达标检测

### 一、完成句子

1. 一有人和你一起去吗？

一是的。我和我妈妈一起去。

—\_\_\_\_\_ you go \_\_\_\_\_ ?

—Yes, I went \_\_\_\_\_ my mom.

2. 昨天的食物怎么样呢？

\_\_\_\_\_ the food yesterday?

3. 我现在不想吃任何东西。

I don't feel like \_\_\_\_\_.

4. 公园里有太多的人。

There were \_\_\_\_\_ people in the park.

5. 由于我们没带伞，我们又冷又湿。

We didn't bring our umbrellas, so we were \_\_\_\_\_.

6. 由于坏天气，我看不到下边任何东西。

We couldn't see anything below \_\_\_\_\_ the bad weather.

7. 昨天下午，我没有足够的钱。

I \_\_\_\_\_ enough money yesterday afternoon.

8. 盒子里几乎没有果汁了。\_\_\_\_\_ little juice in the box.

9. 你在等我们吗？

Are you \_\_\_\_\_ us?

10. 我想知道他怎么到达山顶的。

I'm \_\_\_\_\_ how he got to the top of the hill.

### 二、用所给单词的适当形式填空

1. There \_\_\_\_\_ (be) many old houses here last year.

2. I \_\_\_\_\_ (meet) an actor yesterday.

3. She usually \_\_\_\_\_ (have) lunch at home. But yesterday she \_\_\_\_\_ (have) it at school.

4. I \_\_\_\_\_ (go) to the New York City with my mother last year.

5. They \_\_\_\_\_ (take) lots of photos last week.

6. My daughter \_\_\_\_\_ (not go) to school yesterday.

7. I feel like \_\_\_\_\_ (drink) some water.

8. —What \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ (do) last weekend?

—I \_\_\_\_\_ (study) math Saturday.

9. We must try our best \_\_\_\_\_ (finish) the work.

10. How exciting they were! They kept \_\_\_\_\_ (sing) all the afternoon.

11. His brother disliked \_\_\_\_\_ (swim)



12. There are a lot of \_\_\_\_\_ (different) between the two pictures.  
 13. It's \_\_\_\_\_ (sun) today.  
 14. The bus trip was \_\_\_\_\_ (relax). We enjoyed \_\_\_\_\_ (our).  
 15. Let me help you \_\_\_\_\_ (find) him.

### 三、句型转换

1. Lisa visited the art museum last Sunday. (改为否定句)  
 Lisa \_\_\_\_\_ the art museum last Sunday.  
 2. The Smiths went to the beach on vacation. (改为一般疑问句)  
 \_\_\_\_\_ the Smiths \_\_\_\_\_ to the beach on vacation?  
 3. They were busy last week. (改为一般疑问句)  
 \_\_\_\_\_ they \_\_\_\_\_ last week?  
 4. Gina studied for the exam last night. (对画线部分提问)  
 \_\_\_\_\_ Gina \_\_\_\_\_ last night?  
 5. I went shopping with my parents last Friday. (对画线部分提问)  
 \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ shopping with last Friday?

### 四、单项选择题

1. —Mum, did you see my iPad \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
 —Sorry, I didn't.  
 A. somewhere                  B. anywhere                  C. nowhere                  D. everywhere
2. —\_\_\_\_\_ did the Browns go on vacation?  
 —Zhanjiang, Guangdong.  
 A. What                          B. How                          C. Where                          D. When
3. —Can I tell Jim about the news?  
 —No, I don't want \_\_\_\_\_ else to know it.  
 A. someone                  B. anyone                  C. everybody                  D. no one
4. The homework is really difficult, so \_\_\_\_\_ students can finish it on time.  
 A. many                          B. much                          C. few                          D. little
5. —How was your weekend, Jane?  
 —Pretty good! I \_\_\_\_\_ the science museum with my friends.  
 A. visit                          B. visiting                          C. visited                          D. visits
6. —Is \_\_\_\_\_ here today?  
 —No. Bob is not here.  
 A. someone                  B. anyone                  C. everyone                  D. no one
7. My sister is free now. She has \_\_\_\_\_ to do.  
 A. nothing                          B. something                          C. everything                          D. anything
8. —Jim, who teaches you Chinese?  
 —No one. I learn it by \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. me                          B. mine                          C. myself                          D. I

9. —Who's that man in a white shirt?  
—Oh, he is my teacher, Mr. Chen. He teaches \_\_\_\_\_ math.  
A. me                      B. myself                      C. mine                      D. my
10. What about \_\_\_\_\_ out for a walk?  
A. go                      B. going                      C. went                      D. to go
11. —Did you enjoy the food in Chongqing?  
—\_\_\_\_\_. Everything tasted really good.  
A. That's too bad.      B. It's great.                      C. No, I didn't.                      D. Of course.
12. I felt \_\_\_\_\_ when I heard the \_\_\_\_\_ news.  
A. exciting; excited      B. excited; exciting      C. exciting; exciting      D. excited; excited
13. We ate a lot at lunch because the food was really \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. interesting                      B. boring                      C. delicious                      D. terrible
14. The computer is not \_\_\_\_\_. And the price of it is the lowest (最低) of the three.  
A. cheap                      B. expensive                      C. high                      D. low
15. It was sunny and we \_\_\_\_\_ basketball all afternoon.  
A. play                      B. playing                      C. played                      D. plays
16. —Did your mother buy \_\_\_\_\_ for you in Tokyo (东京) that day?  
—No, she didn't.  
A. something special                      B. anything special  
C. special something                      D. special anything
17. Everyone in my class \_\_\_\_\_ the poor boy without parents.  
A. want to help                      B. want helping                      C. wants to help                      D. wants helping
18. —\_\_\_\_\_ did you go there with?  
—I went there with my parents.  
A. Where                      B. Who                      C. When                      D. How
19. My brother decided \_\_\_\_\_ money to buy a new car.  
A. save                      B. saves                      C. to save                      D. saving
20. —What's this?  
—Oh, my God! It's a gift for James. I forgot \_\_\_\_\_ it this afternoon.  
A. posting                      B. posted                      C. post                      D. to post
21. —Would you like \_\_\_\_\_ to drink?  
—Yes. Some coffee and a cup of tea, please.  
A. something                      B. anything                      C. nothing                      D. somebody
22. He never finishes his homework, so \_\_\_\_\_ teachers like him.  
A. few                      B. little                      C. many                      D. a lot of
23. —Where did you go on \_\_\_\_\_ vacation?  
—I went to London.  
A. a                      B. an                      C. the                      D. /
24. I didn't have \_\_\_\_\_ so I was wet.

- A. any clothes      B. an umbrella      C. a umbrella      D. any food
25. I wonder \_\_\_\_\_ in the past.  
A. what life was like      B. what was life like  
C. what life is like      D. what is life like
26. —Did you meet \_\_\_\_\_ in Shanghai?  
—Yes. I met Yang Mi and Lu Han there.  
A. someone interesting      B. anyone interesting  
C. interesting someone      D. interesting something
27. —When \_\_\_\_\_ Julie \_\_\_\_\_ her room?  
—Last night.  
A. does; clean      B. did; clean      C. is; clean      D. do; clean
28. I have \_\_\_\_\_ to eat and I am very hungry.  
A. something      B. nothing      C. everything      D. anything
29. He did not write \_\_\_\_\_, although he had \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. careful enough; enough time      B. carefully enough; enough time  
C. enough careful; enough time      D. enough carefully; time enough
30. She is new here, so she has \_\_\_\_\_ friends at school.  
A. much      B. few      C. little      D. a little

### 五、完成对话

A: Hi, Mary. How was your school trip?

B: 1 \_\_\_\_\_

A: Really? Where did you go?

B: Well, 2 \_\_\_\_\_ We climbed a mountain there. And the weather was so nice. 3 \_\_\_\_\_

They were so beautiful.

A: Oh, that sounds good.

B: Ugh! 4 \_\_\_\_\_

A: We went to an art museum. It was terrible. There were so many people. 5 \_\_\_\_\_

Then we went to a special art room and drew pictures. It was so boring!

B: Sounds like you had a terrible school trip.

A: Yes.

- A. It was cloudy.  
B. We went to the countryside.  
C. We watched the stars at night.  
D. It was great.  
E. So we had to leave.  
F. What did you do?  
G. How about your school trip, Tom?

## 六、完形填空

John had a(an) 1 weekend. On Saturday morning, he 2 to the library. He 3 math 4 Saturday afternoon he went to the park. He played tennis 5 his friend, Lea. Lisa was busy on Saturday, too. She 6 her room in the morning. In the afternoon she 7 her friend, Kim. They played computer games.

On Sunday morning John and Lisa played 8 tennis. They had 9. In the afternoon Lisa was busy. She studied math and science in the library. But John was 10, so he watched TV.

- |                    |             |            |            |
|--------------------|-------------|------------|------------|
| 1. A. busy         | B. exciting | C. free    | D. quiet   |
| 2. A. go           | B. goes     | C. goed    | D. went    |
| 3. A. study        | B. studies  | C. studied | D. studied |
| 4. A. on           | B. in       | C. at      | D. for     |
| 5. A. and          | B. with     | C. during  | D. or      |
| 6. A. is cleaning  | B. clean    | C. cleans  | D. cleaned |
| 7. A. visited      | B. called   | C. phoned  | D. saw     |
| 8. A. the          | B. a        | C. an      | D. /       |
| 9. A. a fun        | B. fun      | C. funny   | D. funs    |
| 10. A. interesting | B. busy     | C. boring  | D. free    |

## 七、阅读理解

Many people go on winter vacations to get away from the cold weather or the city life. But how do you pick a winter vacation destination（目的地）for your family?

1. Budget: Know how much you want to spend on your vacation. Then you can know how far you can travel and what kind of activities you can enjoy.

2. Family Likes & Dislikes: You don't want to visit the sea if your family are afraid of water, so you need to know what their likes and dislikes are.

3. Activities: Know about activities around the vacation destination. For example, if you want to go swimming, can you? If you want to go to parks, are they open?

4. Accommodations（住宿）: Hotels are expensive. Look for vacation home rentals（出租的房屋）. You can get so much more that you would never get at a hotel. You can also cook by yourselves to save money from eating out.

- Many people go on winter vacations to get away from \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. family dinners                      B. their work  
C. the cold weather                      D. the countryside life
- What does the underlined word "budget" mean in Chinese?  
A. 财政                      B. 商业                      C. 收入                      D. 预算
- You don't need to think about \_\_\_\_\_ according to the passage.  
A. what food you can eat                      B. what activities you can do  
C. what your family like                      D. how much you have to spend

4. Which is NOT the reason (理由) why people look for vacation home rentals?

- A. Hotels are expensive.
- B. There are not enough hotels.
- C. People can enjoy so much more that they can't get in hotels.
- D. People can cook by themselves.

5. Which is the best title for the passage?

- A. What You Can Do During the Winter Vacation
- B. Why People Like Going on Winter Vacations
- C. How to Pick a Winter Vacation Destination
- D. How to Rent (租) a Vacation Home

#### 八、选择方框内适合的单词(短语)填空

somebody	for	give	who	is
----------	-----	------	-----	----

One day Mr. Black went into a restaurant. He put his coat on a chair near the door. There 1 nothing in the pockets (口袋) of his coat. After he had his meal (饭), he went to take his coat back. He found there was much money in one of his pockets. “2 is the money?” he thought.

He saw a waiter near the door. So Mr. Black said to him, “3 put a lot of money in my coat. I have no time to wait 4 him. I have to go. Take it, please. When he comes back, give it to him.” The waiter took it and went away. At the moment, another man came with a coat just like Mr. Black's.

“I'm sorry,” said the man. “I took your coat and you got mine. Please give me my coat and the money.”

Mr. Black answered, “I 5 it to the waiter. He'll give it to you.”

Mr. Black called the manager (经理), but the manager said, “We have no waiters here. We only have waitresses (女服务员). He must be a thief (贼)!”

#### 九、书面表达

##### (一) 句子翻译

1. 教室里几乎没有学生。
2. 玻璃杯里几乎没有果汁。
3. 昨天我没有为我父母买任何东西。
4. 昨天每个人都玩得很开心。
5. 上周我们去桂林度假。
6. 这些衣服很贵。
7. 我决定去海滩。
8. 昨天我没有足够的钱。
9. 因为天气不好, 所以昨天我没出去。
10. 我不喜欢玩电脑。

（二）短文写作（60 词左右）

假如你是王娜，今天你去学校英语角练习口语，英语角讨论的话题是 “My Summer Vacation”。请你根据以下提示，向同学们介绍一下你的暑假生活。

提示：

1. 在家待了一周：做作业、练习钢琴；
2. 去看望祖父母：陪他们聊天、帮他们做家务（housework）；
3. 去大连旅游：游泳、购物。

.....

要求：

1. 语句通顺、逻辑连贯；
2. 不少于 60 词。开头已给出，不计入总词数。
3. 成篇

I had an interesting summer vacation. I stayed at home for a week. I did my homework first and practiced the piano. Then I went to visit my grandparents by train. I stayed with them for five days. I talked with them and helped them do some housework. After that, I went to Zhanjiang with my parents. We swam in the sea and took a walk on the beach. We sent shopping and ate some special food there, too. We enjoyed ourselves there.

►►►► Unit 2 How often do you exercise?

\*知识清单

语言目标		谈论频率
Section A	单词	housework <i>n.</i> 家务劳动 hardly <i>adv.</i> 几乎不 Internet <i>n.</i> 互联网 program <i>n.</i> 节目 full <i>adj.</i> 忙的；满的；充满的 swing <i>v. &amp; n.</i> 摆动；秋千 → swung → swung maybe <i>adv.</i> 大概；或许；可能 little <i>adj. &amp; pron. adv.</i> → 比较级 较少；较小 less → （最高级）least 最小；最少；最小的；最少的（后接不可数名词） one <i>num.</i> → once <i>adv.</i> 一次；曾经 two <i>num.</i> → twice <i>adv.</i> 两次；两倍 three times 三次 four times 四次 five times 五次
	短语	how often 多久一次 hardly ever 几乎从不 twice a week 一周两次 swing dance 摇摆舞 stay up late 熬夜 at least 至少；不少于
	句型	(1) —What do you usually do on weekends? —I always exercise. (2) —How often does he watch TV? —He hardly ever watches TV. (3) —Do you go shopping? —No, I never go shopping.

(续表)

Section B	单词	coffee <i>n.</i> 咖啡    health <i>n.</i> 健康 (be in good health) → healthy <i>adj.</i> 健康的 (keep healthy)    result <i>n.</i> 结果; 后果    percent <i>n.</i> 百分之……    online 在线 (的)    television <i>n.</i> 电视节目; 电视机    although 尽管; 虽然    mind <i>n.</i> 头脑; 心智 → mind <i>v.</i> 介意 (后接动词-ing)    body <i>n.</i> 身体    such 这样的; 那样的    together 在一起; 共同    die <i>v.</i> 消失; 灭亡 → dead <i>adj.</i> 死的; 死亡的 → death <i>n.</i> 死亡; 死    dentist <i>n.</i> 牙科医生    magazine <i>n.</i> 杂志; 期刊    however 然而; 不过    than 比    almost 几乎; 差不多    none 没有一个; 毫无    point 得分; 指向    write <i>v.</i> → wrote → written 写 → writer <i>n.</i> 作家; 作者
	短语	junk food 垃圾食品    more than 多于    be good for 对……有益 (be good at 擅长……; do well in 擅长做……; be good with 与……相处得好) go online 上网    such as 例如    less than 少于    teeth cleaning 清洁牙齿
	句型	(1) But my mother wants me to drink it. She says it's good for my health. 我妈妈想让我喝它。她说它对我的健康有益。 (2) Most students use it for fun and not for homework. 大多数学生用它来娱乐而不是做作业。 (3) It is good to relax by using the Internet or watching game shows, but we think the best way to relax is through exercise. 通过上网或看竞赛节目来放松很好, 但是我们认为最好的放松方式是通过运动。
语法	频度副词	

## \*语法精讲

## 频度副词

## 新知引导

根据要求补全下列句子, 并体会频度副词的用法。

- Kate is lazy. She \_\_\_\_\_ (hardly, always) exercises.
- Jim is friendly. He \_\_\_\_\_ (never, often) helps us with our math.
- She often goes shopping with her mother, but \_\_\_\_\_ (usually, sometimes) she goes shopping with her father.
- I usually use the Internet \_\_\_\_\_ (一周两次)。
- \_\_\_\_\_ (多久一次) does your grandpa watch TV?  
— \_\_\_\_\_ (one) a week.

## 【归纳】

## 1. 频度副词的含义

(1) 表示次数、频率的副词称为频度副词。常用的频度副词按频率发生的高低依次为: always (100%) > usually (80%) > often (60%) > sometimes (40%) > seldom (20%) >

hardly ever (10%) > never (0%)

John always comes late. 约翰总是迟到。

He hardly ever exercises. 他几乎从不锻炼。

(2) 表示具体的频率、次数时，一次用 once，两次用 twice，三次及以上用“基数词+times”。

I play soccer twice a week. 我一周踢两次足球。

She watches TV four times a week. 她一周看四次电视。

## 2. 频度副词在句中的位置

(1) 频度副词一般放在实义动词之前，be 动词、助动词或情态动词之后。

We never eat junk food. 我们从不吃垃圾食品。

I can hardly say a word. 我几乎说不出一句话来。

(2) 有些频度副词也可位于句首，但表示不同的含义。

① sometimes 常用于句首，和位于句中区别不大。

Sometimes Jack plays computer games. 杰克有时玩电脑游戏。

② often 用于句首时，通常表示强调，且其前一般有 quite, very 修饰。

Very often he goes online. 他上网很经常。

③ usually 有时也用于句首，其前不用修饰语。

Usually my father gets up early. 我爸爸通常起得早。

④ always 一般不用于句首，但可用于祈使句中。

Always remember this. 请时刻记得这一点。

## 3. 对频度副词提问时，用 how often。

—How often do you exercise? 你多久锻炼一次？

—Hardly ever. 几乎从不。

## 【活用】

1. Helen was so excited at the news that she could \_\_\_\_\_ say a word.

A. ever                      B. almost                      C. hardly                      D. always

2. Though they are far away from school, the children \_\_\_\_\_ go to school on time.

A. ever                      B. always                      C. never                      D. hardly ever

3. Western (西方的) people \_\_\_\_\_ use Mr. or Mrs. before their family names.

A. always                      B. often                      C. sometimes                      D. never

4. —Ms. Lin is very popular among the students.

—Yes. Her classes are \_\_\_\_\_ interesting.

A. always                      B. sometimes                      C. hardly                      D. never

5. Mr. Li is very heavy because he \_\_\_\_\_ exercises.

A. always                      B. often                      C. hardly ever                      D. usually

6. —Do you often watch TV?

—No, \_\_\_\_\_. I have too much homework to do.

A. never                      B. usually                      C. always                      D. often



## \*知识辨析

辨析 1: maybe *adv.* 大概; 或许; 可能

※ I go to the movies **maybe** once a month. 我大概每月去看一次电影。

【归纳】go to the movies 看电影

【辨异】maybe 和 may be 的区别

maybe 副词, 意为“也许, 大概, 可能”, 常位于句首。

may be *may* 是情态动词, 表示许可, 意为“可以……”。*may be* 意为“可能是, 也许是”。是情态动词+*be* 动词的结构。

【活用】

① Your dictionary \_\_\_\_\_ (may be, maybe) in your schoolbag.

② 也许他正在厨房里煮饭呢。

\_\_\_\_\_ (may be, maybe) he is cooking in the kitchen.

辨析 2: help with... 帮助做……

※ I often **help** my parents **with** housework. 我经常帮助父母做家务。

※ Helen **helped** me (to) **clean** the classroom yesterday. Helen 昨天帮我打扫教室。

【归纳】

(1) help with sth. 意为“帮助做某事”。

help sb. with sth. = help sb. (to) do sth. 帮助某人做某事 例如:

I often help him with his English. = I often help him (to) learn English. 我经常帮他学习英语。

(2) housework 意为“家务劳动”。不可数名词。

They have much housework to do.

【活用】

① —Could you help me \_\_\_\_\_ the housework, Jim?

—Sorry, mum. I'm busy \_\_\_\_\_ my homework.

A. do; doing

B. to do; to do

C. with; doing

D. doing; to do

② —Let me help you \_\_\_\_\_ the heavy box.

—Thanks for your kindness.

A. to carrying

B. carried

C. carrying

D. to carry

辨析 3: be good for 意为“对……有益”。反义词为 be bad for “对……有害”。

※ She says **it's good for** my health. 她说对我的健康有益。

※ Yao Ming **is good at** playing basketball. 姚明擅长打篮球。

※ The girl **is good with** those old people. 女孩和那些老人相处得很好。

※ Our English teacher **is good to** us. 我们英语老师对我们很好。

Vegetables are good for you. 蔬菜对你有好处。

【归纳】good 的相关用语

1. be good to “对……好”，其反义短语为 be bad to “对……不好”。

2. be good at “在……方面擅长”，at 后面常接名词、代词或动词-ing 形式，同义短语为 do well in。

She is good at English and Chinese. = She does well in English and Chinese. 她擅长英语和汉语。

I am good at playing badminton.

3. be good with “和……相处得好；擅于和……相处”。

Are you good with children? 你和孩子们相处得好吗？

【活用】

- ① To drive less is \_\_\_\_\_ the environment (环境) .  
A. good in                      B. good for                      C. good on                      D. good at
- ② Mr. Lan is \_\_\_\_\_ her students and they all love her.  
A. good at                      B. good to                      C. good for                      D. good in
- ③ My mother is good \_\_\_\_\_ singing and my father is good \_\_\_\_\_ children.  
A. at; for                      B. for; on                      C. on; with                      D. at; with
- ④ Eating much vegetables is good \_\_\_\_\_ our health.  
A. on                      B. at                      C. in                      D. for

辨析 4: percent *n.* 百分之……

※We found that fifteen **percent** of our students exercise every day. 我们发现只有 15% 的学生每天锻炼身体。

※Eighty **percent** of the time has passed. 百分之八十的时间已经过去了。

【归纳】

百分数由 percent 来表示，构成：基数词+percent，常用“数词+percent of+名词”

“数词+percent of+名词”这一结构作主语时，谓语的单复数要看 percent of 后跟的名词，如果是可数名词复数，谓语应该用复数；如果是不可数名词，谓语应该用单数。

Thirty percent of **the students like** watching game shows.

70 percent of **water is** salty water (盐水) .

【活用】

- ① Forty \_\_\_\_\_(percent) of the work has been finished.
- ② Fifty percent of the teachers in our school \_\_\_\_\_(be) women.

辨析 5: although *conj.* 虽然；尽管；即使

※Although many students like to watch sports, game shows are the most popular.

尽管许多学生喜欢看运动类节目，但游戏类节目最受欢迎。

※Although she was tired, she was very happy. 虽然她很累，但是她很高兴。

※He went to school, although he was badly ill (病得很重). 他上学去了, 尽管他病得很重。

### 【归纳】

Although 是连词, 意为“虽然; 尽管; 即使”, 引导让步状语从句, 与 though 同义, 其引导的让步状语从句可以位于主句之前, 也可以位于主句之后。

注意: although 与 but 不能同时使用。

### 【活用】

- ① My cousin knows a lot about geography, \_\_\_\_\_ he is only four years old.  
A. because                      B. so                      C. although                      D. but
- ② \_\_\_\_\_ he has a lot of money, \_\_\_\_\_ he is unhappy.  
A. Although, but              B. Though, but              C. Although; /              D. Because; but

辨析 6: through *prep.* 以; 凭借; 穿过

※We think the best way to relax is through exercise. 我们认为最好的放松方式是通过锻炼。

※The river runs through our village. 这条河穿过我们的村子。

### 【归纳】

Through 是介词, 意为“凭借; 穿过”, 后接名词、代词等。

【辨异】across, over 与 through 的异同

 <p>Go across the street. =Cross the street.</p> <p>横越, 穿过, 指从表面走过或从一边走到另一边</p>	 <p>Go through the tunnel (隧道)</p> <p>穿越, 从空间内穿越</p>	 <p>Jump over the hurdle (障碍)</p> <p>越过, 指超过一段距离或度过一段时间</p>
--	---	---

### 【活用】

- ① The sunlight was coming in \_\_\_\_\_ the window.  
A. on                      B. with                      C. through
- ② He can learn English well \_\_\_\_\_ hard work.  
A. through                      B. in                      C. over
- ③ 瞧! 他们正在过马路。Look! They are going \_\_\_\_\_ the road.
- ④ 那只小鸟通过窗户飞了进来。

The bird flew into the room \_\_\_\_\_ the window.

辨析 7: mind *n.* 头脑; 心智

※ It's healthy for the mind and the body. 它对身心都有好处。

※ He has a good mind. 他有聪明的头脑。

※ Do you mind helping me with housework? 你介意帮我干家务吗?

### 【归纳】

(1) mind 作名词, 意为“头脑、心智”。

(2) mind 作动词, 意为“介意”, 后接名词、代词或动词-ing 形式。

### 【活用】

① —Do you mind \_\_\_\_\_ me with my Chinese and math this weekend?

—Of course not. And I am free this weekend.

A. help

B. to help

C. helping

D. helped

② Does she mind \_\_\_\_\_ (dance) at my birthday party?

③ 他四肢发达, 头脑简单。

He has the body of a man and the \_\_\_\_\_ of a child.

辨析 8: such as 例如: 像……一样

**such as** 意为“例如: 像……这样”, 后面跟名称、代词、动词的-ing 形式。例如:

※ I have a lot of hobbies, **such as reading and singing**. 我有许多爱好, 比如读书和唱歌。

### 【归纳】

**1. such *adj. & pron.*** 这样的; 那样的; 类似的。作形容词时, 其后修饰名词。

Tom lives in **such** a large house. 汤姆住在一所这么大的房子里。

He is **such a** clever boy. = He is so clever a boy.

It's **such** fine **weather** today. (weather 天气, 不可数名词, 所有不用 a)

### 【辨异】such 和 so 的区别

二者都有“如此; 这样”的意思, 但具体用法相异。such 用来修饰名词, so 用来修饰形容词或副词。

① such+a/an+*adj.* +*n.* (单数)

② such+*adj.* +*n.* (复数/不可数名词)

③ so+*adj.* +a/an+*n.* (单数) = such+a/an+*adj.* +*n.* (单数)

### 【拓展】for example, such as 的区别

for example 一般只举同类人或物中的“一个”为例, 作插入语, 用逗号隔开, 可置于句首、句中、句末。例如:

Noise, for example, is a kind of pollution. 举例说明, 噪音就是一种污染。

such as 常列举同类人或物中的几个例子, 不能穷尽, 可和 and so on 连用, 可分开使用 such...as...。例如:

China has many big cities, such as Beijing, Shanghai, Shenzhen and so on.

中国有许多大城市，比如北京、上海、深圳等。

正：I know four languages, such as Japanese and English. 我懂四种语言，如日语、英语。

误：I know four languages, such as Chinese, French, Japanese and English. 我懂四种语言，如汉语、法语、日语和英语。

### 【活用】

① It's \_\_\_\_\_ interesting story. I would like to read it again.

- A. such a                      B. such an                      C. so a                      D. so an

② I enjoy songs \_\_\_\_\_ this one.

- A. such as                      B. such for                      C. so as                      D. for example

辨析 9：It's good to relax by using the Internet or watching game shows. 通过互联网或观看游戏来放松很好。

【归纳】It's+adj.+to do sth. 做某事是……的

It's good for you to eat a lot of vegetables. 多吃蔬菜对你有好处。

### 【辨异】

It is +adj. +for sb. +to do sth.	形容词描述事物的特征、性质，如 easy, useful, difficult, interesting, dangerous, important 等
It is+ adj. + of sb.+to do	形容词描述行为者的性格、品质，如 kind, nice, polite, clever, friendly, careless

### 【活用】

① It's necessary for you \_\_\_\_\_ early and do exercise.

- A. to get up                      B. getting up                      C. get up                      D. gets up

② We all think it's important \_\_\_\_\_ from computer games.

- A. to stay away                      B. staying away                      C. stayed away                      D. stay away

③ It's not difficult for \_\_\_\_\_ to pass the exam.

- A. they                      B. them                      C. his                      D. she

辨析 10：busy *adj.* 忙碌的；无暇的

busy 为形容词，意为“忙碌的；无暇的”。其反义词为 free “有空的”。其常用搭配：

(1) be busy with sth. 忙于某事

(2) be busy doing sth. 忙于做某事

① 他们在忙着数学考试。

They \_\_\_\_\_ the math test.

② The young man is busy \_\_\_\_\_ (sell) clothes.

辨析 11：Have a good time! 过得愉快！

※ We had a good time in the zoo (动物园) yesterday. 昨天我们在动物园玩得很高兴。

【归纳】

Have a good time 是表示美好祝愿的句式, 常用于对方去参加什么活动或旅行时, 向其表示祝福。good 也可以换成 nice, great 等形容词。

【拓展】

Have a good time! 同义句为 Have fun! 或 Enjoy oneself (oneself 在句中一定要改为反身代词: myself, ourselves, yourself, yourselves, himself, herself, themselves, itself)。

【活用】

① 我们每天过得很愉快。

We \_\_\_\_\_ every day.

② Did you have fun today? (改为同义句)

Did you \_\_\_\_\_ today?

③ — I'll go to Hong Kong for a trip next weekend.

— Great! \_\_\_\_\_

A. Good luck!

B. Have a good time!

C. Best wishes!

D. Glad to see you again!

辨析 12: 16-year-old 十六岁的

※Jane is a **16-year-old** high school student in the United States. Jane 是美国一名十六岁的高中生。

※I have an **8-year-old** brother. 我有一个八岁的弟弟。

【归纳】

基数词+单数名词+形容词构成的是一个复合形容词。复合形容词置于名词前作定语。

Tom is an 11-year-old boy. He has a 5-year plan. Tom 是一个十一岁的男孩。他有一个五年的计划。

【活用】

① The old man has a \_\_\_\_\_ grandson. He loves him very much.

A. 8-year-old

B. 9-years-old

C. 10 years old

D. 12-year-old

② My mother is \_\_\_\_\_.

A. 45 year old

B. 45-year-old

C. 45-years-old

D. 45 years old

③ 我有一个关于未来十年的计划。

I have a \_\_\_\_\_ about the future.

☆达标检测

一、完成句子

1. 我经常去看电影。

I usually \_\_\_\_\_.

2. 他几乎不吃肉。

He hardly \_\_\_\_\_.

3. 我妈妈昨晚熬夜。

My mom \_\_\_\_\_ last night.

4. 我妹妹放学后经常去购物。

My sister often \_\_\_\_\_ shopping \_\_\_\_\_.

5. 我爸爸至少每天锻炼一个小时。

My father exercises \_\_\_\_\_ an hour every day.

6. 他擅长打篮球。He \_\_\_\_\_ basketball.

7. 多吃水果对你健康有好处。

Eating more fruit \_\_\_\_\_ your health.

8. 尽管我们很累,但是我们很高兴。

\_\_\_\_\_ we were tired, we were \_\_\_\_\_.

9. 学好英语对我们很重要。

It's important for us \_\_\_\_\_ English well.

10. 他是一个 11 岁的男孩。

He is \_\_\_\_\_ boy.

## 二、用所给单词的适当形式填空

- How often \_\_\_\_\_ your father \_\_\_\_\_ (drink) wine?
- His mother \_\_\_\_\_ (come) to see him once a week.
- Her sister \_\_\_\_\_ (not stay) at home on Sundays.
- The boy never \_\_\_\_\_ (eat) junk food.
- We should try \_\_\_\_\_ (learn) English well.
- Fifteen \_\_\_\_\_ (percent) of the visitors are from foreign countries.
- Her eating \_\_\_\_\_ (habit) help her keep \_\_\_\_\_ (health).
- His lifestyle is \_\_\_\_\_ (difference) from mine.
- Our English teacher wants us \_\_\_\_\_ (read) English books every day. She \_\_\_\_\_ (say) it's a good habit.
- My father likes reading \_\_\_\_\_ (magazine) after supper.

## 三、句型转换

1. I often help Lucy do her English. (改为同义句)

I often \_\_\_\_\_ Lucy \_\_\_\_\_ her English.

2. The boy drinks milk every day. (对画线部分提问)

\_\_\_\_\_ does the boy drink milk?

3. Alice does her homework at 7:00 p.m. (改为否定句)

Alice \_\_\_\_\_ her homework at 7:00 p.m.

4. I sleep eight hours at night. (对画线部分提问)

\_\_\_\_\_ you sleep at night?

5. They may be students. (改为同义句)

\_\_\_\_\_ they are students.

#### 四、单项选择题

1. His grandmother is well because she often \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. exercises                      B. smokes                      C. sleeps                      D. sings
2. —\_\_\_\_\_ do you go shopping online?  
—Twice a week.  
A. How long                                      B. How many times  
C. How    D. How often
3. His mother wants him \_\_\_\_\_ at home today.  
A. stays                      B. stayed                      C. to stay                      D. staying
4. They usually go shopping \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. one a week                      B. once a week                      C. one the week                      D. once week
5. —Li Lei gets up early every day and he is \_\_\_\_\_ late for school.  
—What a good boy!  
A. never                      B. often                      C. usually                      D. sometimes
6. \_\_\_\_\_ hours do you exercise every day?  
A. How long                      B. How much                      C. How many                      D. How often
7. Mr. Morgan \_\_\_\_\_ know the way to the museum.  
A. maybe                      B. may be                      C. may                      D. perhaps
8. Lucy isn't at home. \_\_\_\_\_ she's at school.  
A. May                      B. Maybe                      C. May be                      D. Can
9. He likes all kinds of sports, \_\_\_\_\_ running, swimming and so on.  
A. such                      B. as                      C. so                      D. such as
10. Smoking \_\_\_\_\_ your health.  
A. is good for                      B. is bad for                      C. is good to                      D. is bad to
11. Although they feel tired, \_\_\_\_\_ they still go on working.  
A. and                      B. but                      C. /                      D. so
12. Tim is young, \_\_\_\_\_, he can speak three languages.  
A. but                      B. yet                      C. however                      D. though
13. When he heard the exciting news, he jumped up and down \_\_\_\_\_ excitement.  
A. as                      B. for                      C. to                      D. in
14. The answers \_\_\_\_\_ these questions were very \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. of; interesting                      B. to; interested                      C. of; interested                      D. to; interesting
15. The students exercise every day, and they try \_\_\_\_\_ themselves healthy.  
A. keep                      B. keeping                      C. kept                      D. to keep
16. Many animals \_\_\_\_\_ because the weather was bad.  
A. were dead                      B. dies                      C. dying                      D. death



17. Here \_\_\_\_\_ the results \_\_\_\_\_ the exam.  
A. is; with                      B. are; of                      C. is; of                      D. are; with
18. I do homework every day, usually when I come \_\_\_\_\_ home \_\_\_\_\_ school.  
A. to; from                      B. at; for                      C. /; from                      D. from; to
19. —How \_\_\_\_\_ juice would you like?  
—One kilo.  
A. many                      B. much                      C. heavy                      D. often
20. The woman has \_\_\_\_\_, and the computer is \_\_\_\_\_. So she bought it.  
A. enough money; enough useful                      B. money enough; useful enough  
C. enough money; useful enough                      D. money enough; enough useful
21. It's \_\_\_\_\_ drink, and it's good for your \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. health; healthy                      B. healthy; healthy                      C. health; health                      D. healthy; health
22. It is good \_\_\_\_\_ by \_\_\_\_\_ the Internet.  
A. relax; using                      B. to relax; use                      C. relax; use                      D. to relax; using
23. There are some \_\_\_\_\_ between the two \_\_\_\_\_ pictures.  
A. difference; different                      B. differences; different  
C. different; difference                      D. difference; different
24. I have \_\_\_\_\_ money. Could you give me some?  
A. few                      B. a few                      C. little                      D. a little
25. Students should sleep \_\_\_\_\_ eight hours every day.  
A. less                      B. little                      C. at most                      D. at least
26. —How many books do you have?  
—\_\_\_\_\_.  
A. No one                      B. Nothing                      C. None                      D. Nobody
27. Yesterday we were late for school \_\_\_\_\_ the bad weather.  
A. because                      B. so                      C. for                      D. because of
28. These days, Ms. Li often \_\_\_\_\_ to keep \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. exercise, health                      B. exercises, health  
C. exercise, healthy                      D. exercises, healthy
29. I wonder \_\_\_\_\_ tomorrow.  
A. when will he come                      B. when did he come  
C. when does he come                      D. when he will come
30. The baby is only \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. ten months old                      B. ten monthes old  
C. ten month old                      D. ten-month-old

### 五、完成对话

- A: What 1 \_\_\_\_\_ Tom and Mike sometimes do on weekends?  
B: They sometimes go to the museum.

A: 2 \_\_\_\_\_ do they go to the shopping center?

B: 3 \_\_\_\_\_ ever. Maybe once a year.

A: 4 \_\_\_\_\_ do they watch TV?

B: Mike never watch TV, but Tom watches TV every day.

A: Oh, I'm just like Tom. I watch TV 5 \_\_\_\_\_ at least an hour every day.

## 六、完形填空

How can we keep healthy? One important thing is to exercise 1. The Smith family try to exercise every day. Qiang Smith 2 not exercise in the morning because he must be at his job at seven o'clock. But he runs every evening. He walks a lot, 3. He walks to school every day and after school he 4 basketball with his friends. Qiang goes to a yoga (瑜伽) class 5 a week. But it isn't 6 this way. Last year Mr. and Mrs. Smith drove (驾车) everywhere. They thought they should use (使用) the 7 all the time. Now the Smiths don't use their car, and they all 8 better now. And they think they mustn't be 9. They don't have to exercise every day, but they should 10 to keep in good health.

- |                  |               |                |              |
|------------------|---------------|----------------|--------------|
| 1. A. sometimes  | B. often      | C. never       | D. always    |
| 2. A. may        | B. can        | C. maybe       | D. can be    |
| 3. A. either     | B. also       | C. too         | D. well      |
| 4. A. plays      | B. watches    | C. surfs       | D. looks     |
| 5. A. sometimes  | B. three time | C. three times | D. some time |
| 6. A. always     | B. usually    | C. hardly      | D. sometimes |
| 7. A. skateboard | B. bike       | C. car         | D. ship      |
| 8. A. have       | B. make       | C. feel        | D. study     |
| 9. A. lazy       | B. healthy    | C. active      | D. well      |
| 10. A. want      | B. keep       | C. stay        | D. try       |

## 七、阅读理解

The aim (目的) of students who came to school is to study. But to study requires (需要) a right way, or you waste either the time or the money. The following are the ways of studying.

The best time for reading is morning, because in the morning, the air is fresh and the mind is clear. For that reason, we can get good results (结果).

In studying we must have patience (耐心). If we have not known a text well, we must read it again. We should not read the next one till we have learned the first one.

When we are studying, we must put our hearts into the book, or we can get nothing from the book while we are reading.

We must always ask "whys". If it is not well understood, write it down and ask our teachers or our parents, or friends. In any possible way, we must know it completely and what we've learned can be used well and made better.

Though there are many ways for studying, yet the above mentioned (提到的) will be quite enough if we can keep them in heart and do so.

- The passage tells us \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. the importance of reading                      B. to read in the morning  
C. to pay attention to the ways of studying    D. to have patience in studying
- The passage has taught us \_\_\_\_\_ ways for studying.  
A. three                      B. four                      C. five                      D. many
- We'd better read in the morning because \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. it's hard to remember what we have learned  
B. the air is fresh and the mind is clear  
C. it's difficult to get good results  
D. both A and B
- If we can't put our hearts into the book when we read, it is \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. easy to understand it well  
B. better to get something from it  
C. impossible for us to get something from it  
D. possible to learn something from it
- In studying we must always ask "whys" in order to \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. understand the book well                      B. write down the questions  
C. do with the new words                      D. get some questions to ask our teachers

## 八、书面表达

### (一) 句子翻译(5题)

- 我哥哥几乎不去购物。
- 喝牛奶对健康有好处。
- 学习语文很有趣。
- 这条狗昨天死了。
- Kate 经常去看电影。
- 我不饿。我饱了。
- 刘翔擅长跑步。
- 尽管我很累，但是我很高兴。
- 我有一个十一岁的妹妹。
- 我妈妈不喜欢打篮球。

### (二) 短文写作

你是一名中职生，学习生活当中，你有很多好习惯，但也有一些坏习惯。请利用本单元所学的句型写一篇文章介绍一下自己的做事频率和学习习惯。

成篇

Do you have any good habits or bad habits? For me, I have some good habits. I always get up early in the morning. I exercise every day. So I am very healthy. I run for an hour every day. I play basketball with my classmates after school every afternoon. I go swimming with my friends twice a week.

I do my homework every day. I hardly watch TV.

However, I have some bad habits. I often eat junk food and hardly eat vegetables. Sometimes I stay up too late.

As students, we should have some good habits. They are good for our health.

## ▶▶▶▶ Unit 3 I'm more outgoing than my sister.

### \*知识清单

语言目标		谈论个性，对人、物进行比较	
Section A	单词	outgoing <i>adj.</i> 外向的 both <i>adj. &amp; pron.</i> 两个；两个都 hard-working <i>adj.</i> 辛勤的 competition <i>n.</i> 比赛；竞赛 fantastic <i>adj.</i> 极好的 win <i>v.</i> 赢；获胜 →（过去）won → （过分）won though <i>adv.</i> 尽管 loudly <i>adv.</i> 喧闹地；大声地 good/well → better → best 好的（地）较好的（地）最好的（地） quiet <i>adj.</i> 安静的；轻声的 → quietly <i>adv.</i> 轻 柔地；轻声地 clear <i>adj.</i> 清楚的 → clearly <i>adv.</i> 清楚地	
	短语	1. more outgoing 更外向 2. as...as...和……一样…… 3. the singing competition 歌咏比赛 4. the most important 最重要的 5. be talented in music 在音乐方面有天赋 6. the same as 和……一样 7. care about 关心；在意 8. be different from 和……不同 9. be like a mirror 像一面镜子 10. as long as 只要…… 11. bring out 使显现；使表现出 12. get better grade 获得更好成绩 13. reach for 伸手去拿 14. touch one's heart 触动心灵 15. in fact 事实上 16. make friends 交朋友 17. be good at 善于…… 18. the other 另外一个 19. be similar to 与……相似 20. be good with 善于与……相处	
	句型	Is Tom smarter than Sam? No, he isn't. Sam is smarter than Tom. Is Tara more outgoing than Tina? No, she isn't. Tina is more outgoing than Tara. Are you as friendly as your sister? No, I'm not. I'm friendlier. Does Tara work as hard as Tina? Yes, she does. Who's more hardworking at school? Tina thinks she works harder than me.	
Section B	单词	care <i>v.</i> 在意；担忧 laugh <i>v. &amp; n.</i> 笑；笑声 mirror <i>n.</i> 镜子 necessary <i>adj.</i> 必须的； 必要的 hand <i>n.</i> 手 touch <i>v.</i> 感动；触摸 fact <i>n.</i> 现实；事实 break <i>v.</i> 破；裂；损坏 →（过 去）broke →（过分）broken share <i>n. &amp; v.</i> 分享；共用 information <i>n.</i> 信息（不可数名 词）talent <i>n.</i> 才能；天赋 → talented <i>adj.</i> 有天赋的（be talented in 在……方面有天赋）	

(续表)

语言目标	谈论个性, 对人、物进行比较	
词汇实用	1. have fun doing sth.	享受做某事的乐趣
	2. want to do sth.	想要做某事
句型	3. as + 形容词或副词的原级 + as	与……一样……
	4. be good at doing sth.	擅长做某事
语法	5. make sb. do sth.	让某人做某事
	6. It's + 形容词 + for sb. to do sth.	对某人来说, 做某事是……的
句型		
(1) I'm quieter and more serious than most kids. 我比其他孩子更文静和稳重。		
(2) It's not necessary to be the same. 没有必要一样。		
(3) I don't really care if my friends are the same as me or different. 我不特别在意我的朋友与我相同或不同。		
语法	形容词(带“的”)和副词(带“地”)的比较级	

## \*语法精讲

## 形容词与副词的比较级

大多数形容词(性质形容词)和副词有比较级和最高级的变化, 即原级、比较级和最高级, 用来表示事物的等级差别。原级即形容词的原形, 比较级和最高级有规则变化和不规则变化两种。

## 1. 规则变化

构成法	原级	比较级	最高级
一般单音节词末尾加-er, -est	tall (高的) great (巨大的)	taller greater	tallest greatest
以不发音的 e 结尾的单音节词和少数以-e 结尾的双音节词只加-r, -st	nice (好的) large (大的)	nicer larger	nicest largest
以一个辅音字母结尾的闭音节单音节词, 双写结尾的辅音字母, 再加-er, -est	big (大的) hot (热的)	bigger hotter	biggest hottest
“以辅音字母+y”结尾的双音节词, 改 y 为 i, 再加-er, -est	easy (容易的) busy (忙的)	easier busier	easiest busiest
少数以-er, -ow 结尾的双音节词末尾加-er, -est	clever (聪明的) narrow (窄的)	cleverer narrower	cleverest narrowest
其他双音节词和多音节词, 在前面加 more, most 来构成比较级和最高级	important (重要的) easily (容易地)	more important more easily	most important most easily

## 2. 不规则变化

原级	比较级	最高级
good (好的) well (健康的)	better	best
bad (坏的) ill (有病的)	worse	worst
old (老的)	older/elder	oldest/eldest
much/many (多的)	more	most
little (少的)	less	least
far (远的)	farther/further	farthest/furthest

### 【拓展】

1. Which/Who...+比较级, A 或 B? 表示“A 和 B, 哪一个更……?”
2. “比较级+and+比较级”, 意为“越来越……”
3. “the +比较级, the+比较级”意为“越……, 就越……”
4. 在形容词前和副词前如果有 much, a little, even (甚至), a lot 修饰, 形容词或副词用比较级。

### 【活用】

- ① It is \_\_\_\_\_ to do small things well than do big things poorly.  
A. worse                      B. funnier                      C. better                      D. gooder
- ② Jay Zhou is as \_\_\_\_\_ as Xue Zhiqian in China.  
A. popular                      B. more popular                      C. most popular                      D. popularer
- ③ Sam and Sandy are twin brothers. But Sam is \_\_\_\_\_ than Sandy.  
A. more outgoing                      B. very outgoing  
C. the most outgoing                      D. outgoinger
- ④ It's possible to get \$100 a day in this company (公司), and some days you can get even \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. much                      B. more                      C. little                      D. fewer
- ⑤ —Of the three TV programs, which one do you think is \_\_\_\_\_?  
—I think *A Bite of China* 舌尖上的中国 is.  
A. interesting                      B. more interesting  
C. the most interesting                      D. interestinger
- ⑥ He is a little \_\_\_\_\_ (tall) than me.
- ⑦ The story is much \_\_\_\_\_ (interesting) than that one.
- ⑧ The \_\_\_\_\_ (hard) you work, the better grades you will get.
- ⑨ The girl is becoming \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ (beautiful).
- ⑩ Wang Jing is a lot \_\_\_\_\_ (friendly) than her sister.

## \*知识辨析

解析 1: both *pron.* 二者

※Well, Mary and her best friend are **both** tall. 嗯, 玛丽和她最好的朋友个子都高。

## 【归纳】

both, 代词, 意为“二者”(在句中通常放在系动词、情态动词、助动词之后, 实意动词之前)

They are both my teachers.

both of + 限定词 + 名词复数 both of the boys are doing the housework

both... and ...两者都 → (反义词) neither... nor 两者都不……

both → (反义词) neither

## 【活用】

- ① My parents \_\_\_\_\_ doctors.  
A. both are                      B. all are                      C. are all                      D. are both
- ② I'll take \_\_\_\_\_ of the cameras. One is for my brother and the other is for Jim.  
A. either                      B. both                      C. all                      D. neither
- ③ I asked two students the way to the post office, but \_\_\_\_\_ of them knew.  
A. both                      B. either                      C. none                      D. neither
- ④ Bob and David are friends. \_\_\_\_\_ of them work in the art club as volunteers.  
A. All                      B. Both                      C. Each                      D. Every
- ⑤ —To achieve (获得) a bright future, we should \_\_\_\_\_ study hard \_\_\_\_\_ keep in good health.  
—I agree with you.  
A. not; but                      B. not only; but also  
C. neither; nor                      D. either; or

解析 2: care *v. & n.* 在意; 担忧; 关心

※A good friend **truly cares about** me. 好朋友真正地关心我。

## 【归纳】

care *v.* 关心; 担心; → careful *adj.* 仔细的; 小心的 → carefully *adv.* 仔细地

care about 关心, 后接名词、代词或动名词

Lei Feng always cares about others. He doesn't think of himself.

## 【短语】

care for 喜欢; 关心; 照顾      take care of = look after 照顾      take care 小心

## 【活用】

用 care 的适当形式填空:

- 【拓展】true *adj.* 真的→ truth *n.* 事实→truly *adv.*真正地

### 【活用】

- 解析 3: A good friend makes me laugh. 好朋友逗我笑。

**1. laugh** 作动词，意为“笑；发笑”

**laugh at sb. = make fun of 取笑某人**

Don't laugh at him. 别嘲笑他。

We had a good laugh at his joke. 我们被他的笑话逗得哈哈大笑。

① **make sb. do sth.** 让某人做某事

My teacher makes me do my homework every day. 我的老师每天都让我做家庭作业。

The news made him happy. 这个消息使他很高兴。

① The peaceful music in the CD made the students \_\_\_\_\_ relaxed.

- ② Colors can change our moods (情绪) and made us happy or sad, en



A. feel

B. to feel

C. felt

D. feeling

解析 4: reach v. 伸手; 到达; 抵达

※A true friend **reaches** for your hand and touches your heart. 一个真正的朋友会向你伸出手, 触动你的心灵。

### 【归纳】

reach + 地点名词 = arrive in (at) = get to + 地点名词

reach here(there, home) = arrive here (there, home) = get here(there/ home) (注意: here, there, home 是副词)

### 【活用】

① Will you \_\_\_\_\_ the station at ten?

A. get to

B. reach to

C. arrive

D. get

② What time does the train \_\_\_\_\_ Liuzhou?

A. get

B. arrive

C. reach to

D. arrive in

### 【拓展】

#### 1. hand n. 手

hand in hand 手拉手 shake hands 握手 give sb. a hand 帮助某人

#### 2. heart n. 心, 心脏

learn sth. by heart 用心默记 lose heart 灰心, 泄气

### 【活用】

③ You have two \_\_\_\_\_ (hand), one to help yourself and the other to help those around you.

④ She can't help you because she has her hands full. She has to go shopping, pick up her son and then cook dinner.

A. is very worried

B. is very angry

C. is very busy

D. is on business

⑤ The news about the missing plane broke many people's hearts. We hope the passengers can come back home safely.

A. lost many people's lives

B. cheered many people up

C. made many people sad

D. surprise many people

解析 5: be different from 意为“与……不同; 与……有差异”

※I'm **different from** Jeff because I'm louder than the other kids in my class.

我与杰夫不一样, 因为我比我们班上的其他孩子要更吵闹。

### 【归纳】

different 形容词, 意为“不同的”→ difference n. 不同点→(复数)differences→differently adv. 不同地

◆ be different from = be not the same as 与……不同

【拓展】【记：“信心”和“耐心”的“重要性”“不同”】

形容词	名词
confident 自信的	confidence 自信
patient 有耐心的	patience 耐心
important 重要的	importance 重要性
different 不同的	difference 不同

- ① There are many \_\_\_\_\_ between living in a big city and living in the country.  
A. differences                  B. difference                  C. different                  D. difficult
- ② We should try our best to help the poor children in mountain villages \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. with different ways                  B. under different ways  
C. in different ways                  D. at different ways
- ③ Because of the \_\_\_\_\_ of their purposes（目的）, the students study English in \_\_\_\_\_ ways.  
A. different; different                  B. different; differently  
C. different; difference                  D. difference; different
- ④ John is fond of swimming. His hobby is different from \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. I                  B. me                  C. my                  D. mine
- ⑤ My new mobile phone is different from Jennifer's .  
A. not the same as                  B. all the same as                  C. worse than                  D. difficult to

解析 6: the same as 和……相同

※ I don't really care if my friends are **the same as** me or different.

我并不十分在乎我的朋友跟我一样或与我不同。

【归纳】 the same as 和……相同→（反义词）be different from

My shoes are the same as yours. 我的鞋和你的相同。

【注意】 the same... as 指的是“同种类的事物”。

This is the same wallet as I lost a week ago. 这和我一周前丢失的钱包一样。

【活用】

- Did Helen pass the test too?  
— Yes. In fact, her score（得分） was the same \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. to mine                  B. with me                  C. as mine                  D. to me

解析 7: fact *n.* 事实

※ In fact, she's funnier than anyone I know. 事实上，她比我认识的任何人更有趣。

【归纳】

fact, 名词，意为“事实”

in fact = as a matter of fact. 实际上, 事实上

【活用】

- ① He said nothing about the TV show. \_\_\_\_\_, he didn't watch it.  
A. In fact                      B. First                      C. Last                      D. In all
- ② \_\_\_\_\_, Frank left school at 16, he still become a successful (成功的) writer.  
A. Ever since                      B. In fact                      C. After all                      D. Even though

解析 8: be similar to 与……相像; 类似的

※My best friend is **similar to** Larry. Both of them are less hard-working than me.

【归纳】

similar 形容词, 意为“类似的”。be similar to 与……相似

【活用】

- ① Andrew is \_\_\_\_\_ his father in many ways. They are both tall and handsome.  
A. similar to                      B. the same like                      C. similar with                      D. different from
- ② The Australian lifestyle is very \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. similar with us                      B. similar to us                      C. similar with ours                      D. similar to ours

解析 9: information *n.* (不可数名词) 信息; 消息

※Call the English Study Center at 443-5667 for more **information**.

咨询更多信息请拨打英语学习中心电话 443-5667

【归纳】

information 不可数名词, 意为“信息”

a piece of information 一条信息

【注】news 和 information 都是不可数名词, 前面不可用 a/an 或 one, 也不可数 many。  
若要表示数量, 可用 a piece of/ a bit of

【活用】

- ① I think computers are very useful. They can help us get much \_\_\_\_\_ on the Internet.  
A. game                      B. information                      C. idea                      D. message
- ② There are millions of websites on the Internet and there \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of useful \_\_\_\_\_ on the websites.  
A. are; informations                      B. are; information                      C. is; information                      D. is; informations
- ③ When Peter comes, please ask him to leave a \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. notice                      B. message                      C. sentence                      D. information

解析 10: talented *adj.* 天赋

※A good friend is **talented** in music. 好朋友在音乐方面有天赋。

【归纳】talent *n.* 天赋 → talented *adj.* 有才能的, 有才干的; 能干的

比较级: more talented 最高级: most talented;  
be talented in 在……方面有天赋, 后接名词或 doing

【活用】

The boy \_\_\_\_\_ math.

- A. is talented                  B. has talent                  C. is talented in                  D. has talent in

解析 11: necessary *adj.* 有必要的

※It's not **necessary** to be the same. 没有必要相同。

【归纳】

necessary, 形容词, 意为“必要的”→(反义词) unnecessary *adj.* 不必要的

It's **necessary** for sb. **to do** sth. 对某人而言, 做……很有必要 (重要搭配: 形容词+to+动词原形)

【活用】

① — Mr. Smith, I don't think we can get there on time.

— You mean it's \_\_\_\_\_ for us to take a taxi?

- A. necessary                  B. careful                  C. interesting                  D. difficult

② — I think \_\_\_\_\_ is very necessary for us to learn a foreign language.

— I agree with you.

- A. it                  B. this                  C. that                  D. they

解析 12: share *v.* 分享, 分担

※We can talk about and **share** everything. 我们能谈论和分享所有的事情。

【归纳】

share, 动词, 意为“分享; 分担”

share sth. with sb. 与某人分享, 与某人共有某物

① The music is sweet, she often \_\_\_\_\_ (分享) it with me.

② I used to \_\_\_\_\_ my happiness \_\_\_\_\_ my friends when I won a match.

- A. share; to                  B. sharing; from                  C. share; with                  D. shared; like

解析 13: enjoy *v.* 喜爱□欣赏

So we **enjoy** studying together. 因此我们喜欢在一起学习。

【归纳】

enjoy doing sth. 喜欢做某事

enjoy oneself= have a good time 过得快乐

【活用】

① — Laura enjoys \_\_\_\_\_ story books.

— Me, too.

A. reading

B. read

C. to read

D. reads

② The retired (退休的) couple enjoy \_\_\_\_\_ photos. They always go out with their cameras.

A. take

B. took

C. to take

D. taking

③ Children always have a good time at the Wetland Park (湿地公园) of Liu Panshui.

A. enjoy themselves

B. help each other

C. look beautiful

D. have a big dinner

#### 解析 14: make friends

※I'm shy so it's not easy for me to **make friends**. 我很害羞, 因此对我来说交朋友不太容易。

#### 【归纳】

1. make friends 交朋友 make friends with sb. 与某人交朋友 (friends, 要用复数)

2. It's +**adj.** + for sb. **to do** sth. (强调对动词不定式所表示动作的描述。常用的形容词有 easy, hard, different, important 等)

It's +**adj.** + of sb. **to do** sth. (强调对人的性格、品质的评价。常用的形容词有 good, kind, nice, clever 等)

#### 【活用】

It's impolite \_\_\_\_\_ others.

A. laughs at

B. to laugh at

C. laugh at

D. laughing at

### ☆达标检测

#### 一、完成句子

1. Linda 比 Gina 高。而且她唱歌比 Gina 声音大。

Linda is \_\_\_\_\_ Gina. And she also sings \_\_\_\_\_ than Gina.

2. 我认为 Sally 比 Kate 唱得好。I think Sally sang \_\_\_\_\_ Kate.

3. Lily and Lucy 学习一样努力。Lily works \_\_\_\_\_ Lucy.

4. 头发更短的那一个女孩是我妹妹。The girl \_\_\_\_\_ hair is my sister.

5. 我认为我哥哥比我表弟唱得更清晰。

I think my brother \_\_\_\_\_ than my cousin.

6. Alan 总是使我笑。Alan always \_\_\_\_\_.

7. 他的好朋友喜欢跟他做一样的事。

His good friend likes to do \_\_\_\_\_ as him.

8. 我的妈妈有好的音乐天赋。My mother is \_\_\_\_\_ music.  
 9. 她比她最好的朋友学习更努力。She studies \_\_\_\_\_ her best friend.  
 10. 他们两个人都高。\_\_\_\_\_ are tall.

二、根据句意, 从方框中选择恰当的单词填空, 有的需要变换形式。

mirror, break, heart, competition, reach

1. I'm looking at myself in the \_\_\_\_\_.  
 2. I \_\_\_\_\_ here at about 3 o'clock yesterday afternoon.  
 3. The story touched my \_\_\_\_\_.  
 4. He \_\_\_\_\_ his leg and had to stay in bed.  
 5. He got the first place in the singing \_\_\_\_\_.

三、根据句意, 用括号内所给单词的适当形式填空。

1. Eric plays tennis \_\_\_\_\_ (well) than his brother.  
 2. My sister studies \_\_\_\_\_ (hard) than me and she is good at all the subjects.  
 3. Who speaks more \_\_\_\_\_ (loudly), Lin or Mu?  
 4. He is trying his best to make the baby \_\_\_\_\_ (stop) crying.  
 5. Frank is \_\_\_\_\_ (good) at sports than his friend.  
 6. Sally is \_\_\_\_\_ (talent) in music.  
 7. Our class \_\_\_\_\_ (win) the basketball game yesterday.  
 8. Are you as \_\_\_\_\_ (hard-working) as your best friend?  
 9. My cousin likes math, and he often has \_\_\_\_\_ (good) grades than me.  
 10. Don't \_\_\_\_\_ (touch) it. It breaks easily. A little boy \_\_\_\_\_ (break) one yesterday.

四、单项选择题

1. \_\_\_\_\_ they're brother and sister, they don't look the same.  
 A. Though                      B. When                      C. Because                      D. If  
 2. My cousins like to do the same things as \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. my                      B. myself                      C. me                      D. mine  
 3. Sam is very \_\_\_\_\_, but Henry is very \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. tall; heavy                      B. short; thin                      C. taller; short                      D. tall; short  
 4. Susan is \_\_\_\_\_ at English than Lucy.  
 A. good                      B. better                      C. well                      D. best  
 5. Alice can sing \_\_\_\_\_ and she dances \_\_\_\_\_ than Mary.  
 A. well; better                      B. good; better                      C. well; well                      D. good; good  
 6. I don't like the singing competition because the singers didn't \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. sing clear                      B. sang clearly                      C. sing clearly                      D. sang clear

7. Though she is \_\_\_\_\_ than Lucy, \_\_\_\_\_ she runs faster than her.  
A. younger; /                      B. youngest; /                      C. young; but                      D. younger; but
8. — \_\_\_\_\_ do you like better, English or math?  
—Math. I think math is \_\_\_\_\_ than English.  
A. Which; more interesting                      B. What; interesting  
C. Where; most interesting                      D. Which; interestinger
9. He plays the violin as \_\_\_\_\_ as his brother. Both of \_\_\_\_\_ are interested in music.  
A. good; their                      B. well; them  
C. better; they                      D. best; themselves
10. My friend likes the same clothes \_\_\_\_\_ me.  
A. as                      B. to                      C. with                      D. for
11. My parents \_\_\_\_\_ teachers.  
A. are both                      B. both are                      C. is both                      D. both is
12. Julie is good \_\_\_\_\_ her classmates and teachers, and she is good \_\_\_\_\_ math and English.  
A. with; at                      B. to; with                      C. for; at                      D. at; to
13. Jane is \_\_\_\_\_ than any other students in her class.  
A. quiet                      B. quieter                      C. outgoing                      D. much outgoing
14. It's not interesting \_\_\_\_\_ TV every day. I like reading.  
A. to watch                      B. watching                      C. watch                      D. watched
15. My brother sings much \_\_\_\_\_ than me, but I dance a little \_\_\_\_\_ than him.  
A. clearly; well                      B. clearly; better  
C. more clear; better                      D. more clearly; better
16. My sister works much \_\_\_\_\_ than my brother.  
A. hardly                      B. more hardly                      C. harder                      D. hard
17. —Can you give me some \_\_\_\_\_ about your new school?  
—Sure. There \_\_\_\_\_ a tall teaching building and two libraries.  
A. information; is                      B. information; are  
C. informations; is                      D. information; are
18. —Can you stay here \_\_\_\_\_ longer, Linda?  
—Of course.  
A. little                      B. a few                      C. a little                      D. few
19. My mother is forty-five and my father is forty-three. So my mother is \_\_\_\_\_ than my father.  
A. younger                      B. older                      C. young                      D. old
20. He is a funny boy. He often makes us \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. laughing                      B. to laugh                      C. laugh                      D. laughs
21. Jenny is \_\_\_\_\_ than the other girls. She never stops talking.  
A. quiet                      B. quieter                      C. outgoing                      D. more outgoing

22. It's easy \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_ English. I like it.  
A. for; to learn      B. for; learning      C. of; to learn      D. of; learning
23. —Be \_\_\_\_\_. This is an important meeting.  
—I'm sorry.  
A. strict      B. serious      C. slow      D. smart
24. My grandparents \_\_\_\_\_ taking a walk after dinner.  
A. like both      B. like all      C. both like      D. all like
25. I'm not wearing glasses, so I can't see the pictures \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. differently      B. clearly      C. loudly      D. truly
26. I \_\_\_\_\_ my birthday cake with my friends last night. It was delicious.  
A. touched      B. shared      C. put      D. sold
27. —I don't know anything about water sports.  
—Let's get some \_\_\_\_\_ from the Internet.  
A. information      B. exercise      C. questions      D. stories
28. It was hot yesterday, but it is even \_\_\_\_\_ today.  
A. hot      B. hotter      C. hotter      D. hottest
29. —What is your best friend like?  
—\_\_\_\_\_.  
A. She likes playing basketball      B. She is at home  
C. She is smart and hard-working      D. She likes her father
30. —Is Jane as beautiful as Helen?  
—\_\_\_\_\_. Helen is more beautiful.  
A. Yes, she is      B. Yes, she does  
C. No, she isn't      D. No, she doesn't

## 五、完成对话

A: Who is your best friend?

B: Mary is.

A: 1 \_\_\_\_\_

B: She is tall and thin.

A: Are you quite different?

B: 2 \_\_\_\_\_ For example (例如), we both study hard and like sports.

A: 3 \_\_\_\_\_

B: No, my grades are better than hers.

A: Who is healthier, Mary or you?

B: Mary. 4 \_\_\_\_\_

A: Do you like to have friends who are like you?

B: Yes, I do. 5 \_\_\_\_\_



- A. No, we like to do the same things.  
 B. What does she look like?  
 C. She exercises every day.  
 D. Are Mary's grades better than yours?  
 E. But I also like to have friends who are different from me.

## 六、完形填空

It's nice to have friends. Well, how can we have friends?

First, spend 1 time with people. If you want to make friends, you need to meet people. You can go to places 2 coffee shops or clubs to meet people.

Then, 3 your friend. Once (一旦) you 4 to make friends with someone, you must care about him or her. "A true friend reaches for your hand and touches your heart." 5 it's not necessary for you and your friend to be the same, you need to know him or her. You should help him or her when he or she has 5 problems.

Next, be a good listener. It's important to show that you're interested in others. Listen 7 to what people say and take time to learn more about 8.

At last, encourage (鼓励) your friends. Good friends will 9 both good and bad times. Never laugh at (嘲笑) your 10 in front of others. If someone is laughing at your friend, you should stop him or her.

- |                  |              |                |              |
|------------------|--------------|----------------|--------------|
| 1. A. less       | B. more      | C. good        | D. bad       |
| 2. A. to         | B. with      | C. like        | D. between   |
| 3. A. care about | B. look at   | C. worry about | D. ask for   |
| 4. A. stop       | B. forget    | C. ask         | D. decide    |
| 5. A. Or         | B. Because   | C. Although    | D. If        |
| 6. A. no         | B. some      | C. few         | D. little    |
| 7. A. clearly    | B. quickly   | C. truly       | D. carefully |
| 8. A. you        | B. him       | C. her         | D. them      |
| 9. A. have       | B. try       | C. share       | D. break     |
| 10. A. friend    | B. classmate | C. parent      | D. teacher   |

## 七、阅读理解

One day a man went to see a doctor. After the doctor looked him over carefully, he said to the man, "Well, there is nothing much wrong with you, but I'm afraid you have a problem. You worry too much. A few days ago I had a man with the same trouble as you. He was worried because he didn't pay his tailor's bill (裁缝工钱). I told him not to worry about that any longer. He followed me, and when he came to see me again, he told me he felt much better."

"Yes, I know all about this," answered the man sadly. "You see, I'm that man's tailor."

1. The story took place (发生) \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. at a shop                      B. in a hospital                      C. at a factory                      D. at the tailor's

2. The doctor told the tailor that \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. there was something wrong with his head  
 B. something was wrong with his eyes  
 C. he worried too much  
 D. he was eating too much
3. The earlier patient(病人) told the doctor that he was worried because \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. he had a bad cold  
 B. he hurt himself  
 C. he didn't pay his tailor's bill  
 D. his tailor didn't make him a coat.
4. The doctor told the earlier patient not \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. to worry about the bill any longer  
 B. to take a rest  
 C. to pay the bill at once  
 D. not to listen to him
5. The tailor was worried because \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. he couldn't sleep well  
 B. he had a cold  
 C. the earlier patient didn't pay him  
 D. his head hurt

## 八、书面表达

### （一）句子翻译（5题）

1. 我认为数学比英语有趣。
2. 我比我姐姐更外向。
3. Jim 和 Mike 看起来一样。
4. 在新学校，我交了很多朋友。
5. 这个故事使每个人都哭了。

### （二）短文写作

关于朋友，你不在乎是相同还是不同。请根据表格中提供的信息，写一篇短文介绍你和你的好朋友 Henry 的相同之处和不同之处。不少于 60 字。

人物	不同点	相同点
Henry	1. 比我矮，但是比我跑得快 2. 比我外向，说话声音比我大 3. 比我滑稽，更擅长打篮球	1. 喜欢听音乐 2. 对人友好 3. 学习一样努力
我	1. 更稳重，喜欢待在家里看书 2. 更聪明，喜欢数学和语文	

成篇

My best friend

I don't care if my friends are the same as me or different.

My best friend is Henry. We both like to listen to music. And we are both friendly to others.

He works as hard as me.

Henry is shorter than me, but he can run faster than me. He is more outgoing and speaks more loudly than me. Henry is funnier than me and he is better at basketball.

I'm more serious than Henry. And I like to stay at home and read books. I'm better math and Chinese than him. I think I am smarter than Henry.

I feel happy to have such a good friend.

## ►►► Unit 4 What's the best movie theater?

### 重点语法——形容词的最高级

定义：形容词最高级用于三者或三者以上的人或事物之间的比较，表示在一群人或事物中，其中一个“最……”。表示这一意思时，形容词要用最高级形式，**最高级前一般要用定冠词 the**。

#### （一）最高级变化规则

##### 规则变化

1. 一般在末尾直接加 est: hard—hardest, small—smallest
2. 以不发音的字母 e 结尾的单词，在末尾加 st: large—largest, nice—nicest
3. 重读闭音节的形容词和副词，双写尾字母再加 est: big—biggest, fat—fattest
4. 以辅音字母加 y 结尾的形容词副词，改 y 为 i 再加 est: busy—busiest, happy—happiest
5. 双音节或多音节：大部分双音节和所有的多音节形容词副词，直接在前面加：Beautiful→the most beautiful, expensive→the most expensive, difficult→the most difficult

##### 不规则变化

good <i>adj.</i> 形容词	better	best
well <i>adv.</i> 副词		
bad/ill	worse	worst
badly <i>adv.</i> 副词		
many/much	more	most
little	less	least
far	farther/further	farthest/furthest
old	older	oldest
	elder	eldest

#### （二）最高级的修饰词

1. far, by far, much, almost, nearly 等可修饰最高级。如：  
The building is nearly the highest. 这座楼差不多是最高的。
2. 序数词只能修饰最高级。如：

The Yellow River is the second longest river in China. 黄河是中国第二长河。

3. 形容词的最高级前一般要用定冠词 **the**，当最高级前有物主代词、指示代词或名词所有格等修饰时，则不用定冠词 **the**。

Miss Hu is our best teacher. 胡老师是我们最好的老师。

4. “**the+最高级+of/in/among ...**”与“**比较级+than any other+单数名词**”可互换使用。

He is the tallest boy in our class. = He is taller than any other boy in our class. 他是我们班最高的。

### \*知识辨析

解析 1: comfortable *adj.* 舒服的；舒适的

※comfortable seats 舒适的座位

#### 【归纳】

comfortable 舒适的，安逸的，其名词形式为 comfort “舒适，安逸”，副词形式为 comfortably。

I feel comfortable after the bath. 洗澡后我感到很舒服。

#### 【拓展】

comfortable → (反义词) uncomfortable: 不舒适的，不安逸的

It's uncomfortable to sit on the stone. 在石头上坐着不舒服。

#### 【活用】

① Our classroom is big and bright and we study in it \_\_\_\_\_ (comfortable).

② 天气太热了，我们感到不舒服。

It's too hot and we \_\_\_\_\_ .

③ The old man dislikes the weather. He feels \_\_\_\_\_.

A. happy

B. comfortable

C. uncomfortable

D. comfortably

解析 2: seat *n. & v.* 座位；坐下

※comfortable seats

#### 【归纳】

seat 作名词，意为“座位”

Are there enough seats for everyone? 座位够吗？

#### 【拓展】

seat 作动词，意为“坐下，使就坐”。

I seated myself at my desk. 我在书桌旁坐下。

Be seated, please. = Sit down, please. 请坐下。

相关短语: take one's seat 就座; Please take your seat. 请坐。

## 【活用】

The \_\_\_\_\_(seat) are comfortable in the room.

解析 3: close *adj.* (在时间、空间上) 接近

※It's the closest to home.

※Mary is my close friend.

※It's cold outside. Please close the window.

## 【归纳】

close 形容词。意为“靠近的，接近的”，常与 to、together 连用。

My home is close to the post office. 我家离邮局很近。

## 【拓展】

close 副词。意为“靠近地，接近地，紧密地”。

Come close and I can help you. 走近点，我才能帮助你。

close 作动词，意为“关闭（门、窗等）；结束，终结”。

The teacher closed his class with an English song. 老师以一首英语歌结束了他的课。

## 【活用】

① My house is \_\_\_\_\_ the zoo. It takes only 3 minutes on foot.

A. far from                      B. closed to                      C. closes to                      D. close to

② 你家离学校近吗？你每天怎样去学校？

Is your home \_\_\_\_\_ school? How do you get to school every day?

③ 离开的时候不要忘了关门。

Don't forget \_\_\_\_\_ the door when you leave.

④ 谁是你亲密的朋友？

Who's your \_\_\_\_\_ friend?

解析 4: no problem 不客气；没问题

※—Thanks for telling me. 谢谢你告诉我。

—No problem. 不用客气。

※—Could you post the letter for me? 你能帮我邮寄这封信吗？

—No problem. 没问题。

※—Can you finish the work yourself? 你能自己完成这项工作吗？

—No problem. 没问题。

## 【归纳】

(1) 用来回答感谢，意为“不用谢；别客气；没什么”。相当于 You're welcome./Not at all。

(2) 用来表示同意或愉快地接受请求，意为“没问题；小事一桩”。

(3) 用来表示有能力做某事。意为“没问题；不在话下”。

【活用】

- ① —Would you mind my keeping the book for another week?  
—\_\_\_\_\_. You can keep it for more than two weeks.  
A. No problem. B. Of course.  
C. Sure. D. You're welcome.
- ② —Can you finish the work in an hour?  
—\_\_\_\_\_. The work is really difficult and it takes at least two hours to finish it.  
A. No problem. B. Of course.  
C. I'm afraid I can't. D. It's a piece of cake.

解析 5: choose v. 选择

※The DJs choose songs the most carefully. DJ 们最认真地选择歌曲。

【归纳】

choose 作动词，意为“选择；挑选”(过去式:chose 过去分词:chosen 现在分词:choosing 第三人称单数:chooses)。

It's up to you to choose where we should go. 我们要去的地点，由你负责。

【拓展】

choose sth. for sb. 为某人挑选某物

We chose the house for our home as soon as we saw it. 我们一看见这所房子，就把它选作我们的家了。

choose ... from ... 从……中挑选。

There are lots of gifts to choose. 那儿有很多的礼品可供选择。

Choose → 名词 choice

【活用】

- ① Jim \_\_\_\_\_ a birthday card for his sister just now.  
A. choose B. chose C. chosen D. choosing
- ② 我没有办法，只好和他们一起去。  
I have no \_\_\_\_\_ but to go with them.  
A. choose B. choice C. chose D. chosen

解析 6: so far 到目前为止，迄今为止

※How do you like it so far? 到目前为止，你觉得这儿（怎么样？）

【归纳】so far 意为“到目前为止，迄今为止”，表示时间，经常与现在完成时连用。

So far I feel better. 到目前为止，我觉得好些。

We have made great improvements on the quality so far. 迄今为止，我们在质量上取得了很大的进步。

注意: so far 还表示“到这个程度”, 表示程度。

I can only trust him **so far**. 我对他只能信任到这个程度。

### 【活用】

到目前为止, 没有人见过龙。

No one has seen a dragon \_\_\_\_\_.

解析 7: pretty *adj.* 漂亮的 (副词 *adv.* 相当; 十分; 很)

※I think 970 AM is **pretty** bad. 我认为调幅 970 相当差。

※Mr. Green's daughter is very **pretty**. Green 先生的女儿非常漂亮。

### 【归纳】

pretty	作副词, 意为“相当; 十分; 很”, 修饰形容词和其他副词
	作形容词, 意为“漂亮的”, 比较级为 prettier, 最高级为 prettiest

### 【活用】

① 他的吉他弹得相当好。He plays the piano \_\_\_\_\_.

② I think this girl is \_\_\_\_\_ (pretty) than her sister.

③ Kate is one of the \_\_\_\_\_ (pretty) girls in our school.

解析 8: service *n.* 服务; 服务行为

※It has the worst **service**. 它有最差的服务。

※The restaurant can **serve** many people a day. 这个餐馆每天可以接待很多人。

【归纳】service 服务 (不可数名词)

He spent a life of **service** to others. 他一生为他人服务。(不可数)

Mum is **serving** desserts to the guests. 妈妈正在招待客人吃甜点。(动词)

service	不可数名词, 意为“接待; 服务”
serve	动词, 意为“接待; 服务”。常用搭配: serve sth. to sb. 招待某人吃某食物

### 【活用】

① I don't like the hotel because its \_\_\_\_\_ (serve) is not good.

② My sister is \_\_\_\_\_ (serve) chicken and beef to the customers (顾客).

解析 9: talent *n.* 天赋, 才能

※Talent shows are getting more and more popular.

才艺表演变得越来越受欢迎。

【归纳】talent 名词, 意为“天赋, 才能”, 是不可数名词; 指“天才, 有才能的人”时为可数名词。

have (a) talent for. 有……的天赋

She has **a talent for** English study. 她英语学习有天赋。

温故: talent → (形容词) talented, 固定搭配: be talented in... 在……方面有天赋

【活用】

① 他在数学学习方面有天赋。

He has a \_\_\_\_\_ math.

② 我妹妹在音乐方面有天赋。

My sister is \_\_\_\_\_ music.

解析 10: play a role (in) 发挥作用, 有影响

※They usually **play a role in** deciding the winner.

他们通常在决定(谁是)获胜者方面发挥作用。

【归纳】role 作名词, 意为“作用; 职能; 地位; 角色”

play a role 意为“发挥作用, 有影响”。

The UN would play a major role in *monitoring a ceasefire*. 联合国在*监督停火*方面会发挥重要作用。

【活用】

My father plays \_\_\_\_\_ the meeting.

A. a important role

B. important role

C. an important role in

D. a important role in

解析 11: have...in common 与……有共同点

※All these shows have one thing in common... 所有的节目有一个共同之处……

【归纳】have...in common 意为“与……有共同点”

have something in common 有一些共同之处

have nothing/little in common 没有共同之处

have a lot in common 有很多共同之处

He had very little in common with his sister. 他和姐姐几乎没有什么共同语言。

They have a lot in common—that's why they are best friends. 他们有很多共同之处, 这是他们是好朋友的原因。

【活用】

Ann and I have \_\_\_\_\_ in common. Ann likes sports, but I don't like sports. I like music, but Ann doesn't like music.

A. something

B. a lot

C. nothing

D. anything

解析 12: up to sb. 由某人决定

※That's up to you to decide. 这由你来决定。

【归纳】

You may come on Friday or Saturday—it's up to you. 你可以周五来或周六来——这取



决于你。

### 【活用】

由她来决定。

It's \_\_\_\_\_ to decide.

### 解析 13: make up 编造

※Some think that the lives of the performers are made up. 有些人认为表演者的生活故事是编造的。

### 【归纳】

make up 在这句话中指的是“编造”。

I couldn't remember the fairy story I wanted to tell her, so I made one up as I went along.  
我想不起我要给她讲的那个神话故事，于是我一边走一边编了一个。

### 【拓展】

make up 除了做“编造”讲之外，还有以下两个含义：

1. 构成，组成

Girl students make up only 40% of the students. 女生仅占全部学生的 40%。

2. 和好，言归于好

He and his wife usually make up their quarrel the same day.

他和他妻子吵架通常当天就言归于好。

### 【活用】

① 我认为你编造他的谣言很不厚道。

I don't think it's kind of you to \_\_\_\_\_ about him.

② 她回来之后，他们又和好如初。

She came back and they \_\_\_\_\_.

### 解析 14: for example 例如

※ **For example**, some people say they are poor farmers. 例如，一些人说他们是贫穷的农民。

※ Some children like junk food, **for example**, they often have hamburgers for lunch.  
一些孩子们喜欢垃圾食品，例如，他们午餐常吃汉堡。

※Now, there are similar shows around the world, **such as** *I'm A Singer*.  
现在，世界各地都有相似的节目，例如，《我是歌手》。

### 【归纳】

for example	for example 是列举整体之中的一个为例，在句子中多用作插入语，用逗号与主句隔开，for example 之后也有逗号。for example 作插入语，位置可以在句首、句中或句末。
such as	such as 用来列举整体之中的部分同类人或事物作例。such as 之前一般用逗号和主句隔开，such as 之后没有逗号，直接加名词性短语。

【活用】

① 我喜欢很多球类运动, 例如排球和足球。

I like many ball games, \_\_\_\_\_ volleyball and soccer.

② 我还有其他问题, 比如说, 我们没有足够地钱。

There are some other problems, \_\_\_\_\_, we don't have enough money.

③ 她有很多好习惯, 例如他总是吃蔬菜。

She has many good habits, \_\_\_\_\_, he always eats vegetables.

解析 15: It's always interesting to watch other people show their talents. 欣赏别人展示才艺一直是很有趣的。

本句中涉及两个重要知识点:

1. it is +adj. +for sb+ to do sth

it is +adj. +for sb+ to do sth 句型表示: 对于某人来说, 做……是……的, 是常见的一个句型。

It is important for us to protect the environment from now on.

从现在开始保护环境对我们来说是很重要的。

It is necessary for people to pay attention to traffic lights when walking on the street.

人们在街上走的时候, 很有必要注意红绿灯。

2. 感官动词 watch 的用法。

watch 作为一个感官动词, 其后如果加宾语的话, 用于以下的结构:

watch sb. do sth. 看到某人某了什么事

He often goes to the park to watch old people play chess. 他经常去公园看老人们下象棋。

watch sb. doing sth. 看到某人正在做某事

She is watching the kids playing in the yard. 她正看着孩子们在院子里玩耍。

☆达标检测

一、完成句子

1. 这个餐馆是附近最受欢迎的。The restaurant is \_\_\_\_\_ near here.

2. 我的学校离我家近。My school is \_\_\_\_\_ my home.

3. 我认为它是最差的商店。I think it is \_\_\_\_\_ store.

4. 谢谢你告诉他。Thanks for \_\_\_\_\_.

5. 我认为我哥哥唱得最好。I think my brother \_\_\_\_\_.

6. Alice 是一个漂亮的女孩。Alice \_\_\_\_\_ girl.

7. Alan 是我认识的最有趣的人。Alan is \_\_\_\_\_ person I know.

8. 这些表演给了人们一个实现梦想的机会。

The shows give people a way \_\_\_\_\_ make their dreams \_\_\_\_\_.

9. 不要把她的话太当真。Don't \_\_\_\_\_ her words too \_\_\_\_\_.

10. 才艺表演节目越来越受欢迎。

Talent shows are getting \_\_\_\_\_.

二、根据句意，从方框中选择恰当的单词填空，有的需要变换形式。

watching, fantastic, so far, biggest, telling, freshest, most comfortably, seats

Jim is new in town. He thinks the town is 1 \_\_\_\_\_. But he still doesn't know his way around 2 \_\_\_\_\_. He meets Gina on his way and asks her about the neighborhood.

Gina tells him that the 3 \_\_\_\_\_ supermarket is on Center Street. He can buy the 4 \_\_\_\_\_ food there. Sun Cinema is the newest cinema in town. People can sit the 5 \_\_\_\_\_ because they have the newest 6 \_\_\_\_\_. Jim enjoys 7 \_\_\_\_\_ movies a lot. He's very happy to know about that. He thanks Gina for 8 \_\_\_\_\_ him.

三、根据句意，用括号内所给单词的适当形式填空。

1. She is \_\_\_\_\_ (old) of us all.

2. Who is the \_\_\_\_\_ (tall), Jim, Henry or Mike?

3. Which is \_\_\_\_\_ (big) of the five (oranges)?

4. You can sit the most \_\_\_\_\_ (comfortable) here.

5. Sam's house is the \_\_\_\_\_ (big) of the two.

6. Beijing is one of \_\_\_\_\_ (old) cities in the world.

7. The Yangtze River is one of \_\_\_\_\_ (long) rivers in the world.

8. Are you as \_\_\_\_\_ (hard-working) as your best friend?

9. My cousin told me the \_\_\_\_\_ (boring) stories of all. It didn't make anyone \_\_\_\_\_ (laugh).

10. Nina sings most \_\_\_\_\_ (beautiful). She has the most \_\_\_\_\_ (beautiful) voice in our class.

11. The \_\_\_\_\_ (win) in the talent shows get good prizes.

四、单项选择题

1. If all the students, Jimmy is \_\_\_\_\_ to Mr. Li.

A. close

B. closer

C. the closest

D. the most closest

2. —What do you think is \_\_\_\_\_ invention (发明) in the 21<sup>st</sup> century?

—The Internet, I think.

A. important

B. more important

C. most important

D. the most important

3. —How \_\_\_\_\_ Sam writes!

—Yes, he is the \_\_\_\_\_ in our class.

- A. carefully; most careful                      B. careful; careful  
C. carefully; careful                      D. carefully; careful
4. The sofa feels very \_\_\_\_\_ and we can sit \_\_\_\_\_ on it.  
A. comfortable; comfortable                      B. comfortably; comfortably  
C. comfortably; comfortable                      D. comfortable; comfortably
5. —Could you carry the heavy box for me?  
—\_\_\_\_\_. I'm strong enough.  
A. Not at all                      B. Good idea  
C. Never mind                      D. No problem
6. —The scarves are all beautiful. I can't decide which one to choose.  
—Oh, look at this one. I think it is \_\_\_\_\_ of all.  
A. beautiful                      B. more beautiful  
C. the most beautiful                      D. less beautiful
7. —How do you like this movie?  
—Fantastic. It's the \_\_\_\_\_ one I've ever seen.  
A. better                      B. best                      C. good                      D. worst
8. —Which do you like \_\_\_\_\_, English, Chinese or math?  
—Math. I think math is much \_\_\_\_\_ than any other subject.  
A. best; more interesting                      B. better; interesting  
C. well; most interesting                      D. good; interestinger
9. She plays the piano as \_\_\_\_\_ as her brother.  
A. good                      B. well                      C. better                      D. best
10. Emma does her homework \_\_\_\_\_ of all the students in our class.  
A. careful                      B. most careful  
C. more carefully                      D. most carefully
11. My time in Beijing was one of \_\_\_\_\_ periods (时期) of my life.  
A. most exciting                      B. the most exciting  
C. exciting                      D. more exciting
12. The Yellow River is the second \_\_\_\_\_ river in China.  
A. longer                      B. longest  
C. long                      D. the longest
13. Jane is \_\_\_\_\_ than any other students in her class.  
A. quiet                      B. the quietest  
C. less outgoing                      D. much outgoing
14. The People's Cinema is close \_\_\_\_\_ my home.  
A. in                      B. out                      C. to                      D. of
15. The red pencil is even \_\_\_\_\_ than the green one.  
A. short                      B. shorter                      C. nice                      D. the shortest
16. The weather is \_\_\_\_\_ today than yesterday.

- A. bad                      B. worse                      C. badder                      D. badly
17. Shu-how Lin is now one of \_\_\_\_\_ basketball players in the NBA.  
A. popular                      B. more popular  
C. the most popular                      D. most popular
18. English is my favorite subject, and I am good \_\_\_\_\_ it.  
A. for                      B. to                      C. at                      D. of
19. All these talent shows have one thing \_\_\_\_\_ common.  
A. on                      B. in                      C. at                      D. for
20. Our teacher asked us \_\_\_\_\_ a story about the moon.  
A. to make up                      B. make of  
C. make up                      D. make from
21. It's important for us \_\_\_\_\_ speak English well.  
A. speak                      B. to speak  
C. spoke                      D. speaks
22. It's difficult \_\_\_\_\_ him \_\_\_\_\_ English. But he likes it.  
A. for; to learn                      B. for; learning  
C. of; to learn                      D. of; learning
23. —What a nice watch it is!  
—Yes. It's \_\_\_\_\_ one of all.  
A. expensive                      B. more expensive  
C. the most expensive                      D. most expensive
24. They make the little boy \_\_\_\_\_ the room every day  
A. cleans                      B. clean  
C. to clean                      D. cleaning
25. Our city is becoming \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. more and most beautiful                      B. more beautiful and more beautiful  
C. more and more beautiful                      D. beautiful and beautiful
26. Now the air in our city is \_\_\_\_\_ than it was before.  
A. much better                      B. more worst  
C. more better                      D. much worst
27. Jack is ten years old. He is \_\_\_\_\_ to help his mother do the chores.  
A. enough old                      B. old enough  
C. enough young                      D. young enough
28. When winter comes, days get \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. long and long                      B. short and short  
C. longer and longer                      D. shorter and shorter
29. China is one of \_\_\_\_\_ countries in the world.  
A. larger                      B. largest  
C. the largest                      D. large

30. This T-shirt is as \_\_\_\_\_ as that one.

A. much more expensive

B. expensive

C. much expensive

D. expensiver

### 五、完成对话

A: Hi, Peter. You look tired. 1 \_\_\_\_\_?

B: I stayed out late last night.

A: 2 \_\_\_\_\_?

B: I watched a movie.

A: 3 \_\_\_\_\_?

B: At Dazhong Theater.

A: Oh! Many people think it is a great theater.

B: 4 \_\_\_\_\_. It is cheap and the screens are large.

A: Sounds good! 5 \_\_\_\_\_?

B: The movie was great.

A: Really? I am going to see it when I am free.

A. I think so

B. Where did you watch the movie

C. What do you think of the movie

D. What did you do

E. What's the matter

### 六、完形填空

There is a big supermarket near Jim's house. It's the 1 to her house and also the cheapest one. So she likes 2 there very much. One day, Nadine 3 a piece of beef from the supermarket. When she got home she found it smelled (闻起来) bad. So she walked back to the 4 with the beef.

She went up to the shop assistant 5 sold the beef to her. She asked him to smell the beef himself, but he said that it smelled 6 and gave it back to her. She told him to call the manager (经理). A minute 7, the manager came out. He smelled the beef. It was really bad. The manager said sorry to Nadine and told her that the shop assistant couldn't smell anything 8 he had a bad cold. He asked another shop assistant to 9 another piece of beef for Nadine. She thanked the manager and said that the supermarket had 10 service. Then she went back home happily.

1. A. farther

B. farthest

C. closer

D. closest

2. A. fishing

B. swimming

C. shopping

D. camping

3. A. learned

B. bought

C. showed

D. borrowed

4. A. restaurant

B. supermarket

C. hospital

D. bank

5. A. who

B. where

C. how

D. when

6. A. bad

B. awful

C. good

D. terrible
7. A. later

B. ago

C. after

D. before
8. A. if

B. though

C. until

D. because
9. A. feed

B. get

C. make

D. send
10. A. lazy

B. friendly

C. sick

D. unfriendly

七、阅读理解

A good breakfast is important. You can easily understand it. By breakfast time you have not eaten anything about twelve hours. Your body needs food for morning activities（活动）. One good breakfast should be rice or bread, an egg, milk and fruit. On a cold morning a cup of hot drinks is necessary（必需的）. A good breakfast helps you to smile more easily. It helps you to be more friendly and also to work better and play more happily. Your whole day will be more fun after you have enjoyed a good breakfast.

判断正误，正确的写“T”，错误的写“F”。

1. It's not very important to have a good breakfast.
2. Food is needed in the morning because you have had nothing to eat for the whole night.
3. Only rice or bread will be a good breakfast.
4. If you get up late, you will not eat your breakfast.
5. A good breakfast is helpful to you.

八、书面表达

（一）句子翻译（5题）

1. 我认为数学最有趣。
2. 我姐姐是最好的表演者。
3. 由你来决定价格。
4. Susan 是一个漂亮的女孩。
5. Peter 跑得最快。

（二）短文写作

假如你是韩伟，你们班来自美国的交换生布鲁斯（Bruce）给你写了封邮件，向你询问你们学校附近的餐馆情况。请你根据下表中的信息，给他写封回信向他介绍一下。

要求：

1. 语言通顺、流畅，可适当发挥；
2. 60~70 词。信的开头和结尾已给出，不计入总词数。

名称	评价
Chengdu Restaurant	the best food, but a little expensive
Chinese Noodle Restaurant	the cheapest, but the worst service
Food Cube	the friendliest service, cheap and nice

成篇

Dear Bruce,

I am writing to tell you about the restaurants near our school. There are three restaurants near our school. Chengdu Restaurant has the best food, but it is a little expensive. The Chinese Noodle Restaurant is the cheapest, but it has the worst service. Food Cube has the friendliest service. It is cheap and the food is very nice there. I think it is the best of the three restaurants. Our classmates all like to eat there.

Yours,

Han Wei